

**Respiratory and photosynthetic C and N metabolism of nodulated Lupin roots  
during phosphorus deficiency**

Marcellous R. Le Roux

Thesis submitted in fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor Philosophiae  
in the Department of Biotechnology at the University of the Western Cape.



Co-supervisor:

Prof. S Khan, (PhD)

*(Cape Peninsula University of Technology, RSA)*

**DECLARATION**

I, the undersigned, hereby declare that the work contained in this thesis, entitled:  
***“Respiratory and photosynthetic C and N metabolism of nodulated Lupin roots during phosphorus deficiency”*** is my own original work and that I have not previously, in its entirety or in part, submitted it at any university for a degree. All the sources I have used or quoted have been indicated and acknowledged by means of complete references.

M.R. Le Roux

Signature : ..... Date : .....





## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

After such a long toil it is only right that I thank a few people who have kept me from derailing all together through this strenuous time.

Firstly, to Alex for providing such a great topic to undertake research on. What started off as a mere project to qualify myself to be an expert at, well, something, which at the time seemed to be a bit of a rare skill, eventually exposed me to so much more than just knowledge on the topic of legume symbiosis. For this I shall always be indebted to him. You were always at hand with some constructive and valuable criticism while I was writing up my thesis.

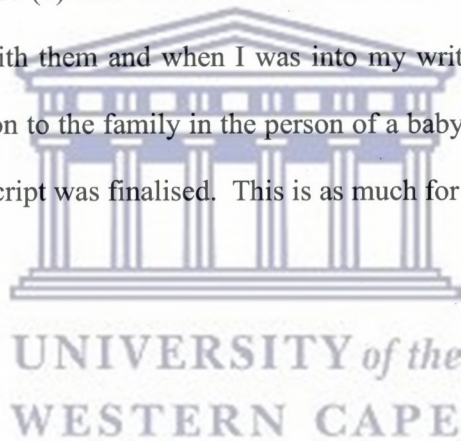
Then, to Sehaam, thanks for taking me under your wing when Alex went to seek 'greener pastures' as it were. I am grateful for the time I was able to spend in your lab and for all the interesting chats we shared, which seemed to encompass just about any topic under the sun, but especially religion.

Therefore, I wish to thank my Creator for giving me the patience and wisdom to complete this work.

Michael T, Rayaana, Saayman, Manesen thank you guys for sharing your inputs on PCR optimisation and for showing me the ropes.

To my family who supported me unconditionally during this time, I wish to extend a warm word of thanks. If it were not for you guys, I would probably have gone mad by now. You were the ones that encouraged me to continue and said that one day I would reap the rewards of my persistence.

Lastly, but by no means least, I wish to thank my wife, Hillary, profusely for her understanding and patience through all this time. Thanks for not putting undue pressure on me when it seemed that I was about to crack. Also, to my two boys Jaimi (4) and Jessé (1) who understood with the maturity of a grown ups when I could not play with them and when I was into my writing stride. We have also had a new addition to the family in the person of a baby girl, Jordanne (2 weeks), while this manuscript was finalised. This is as much for you guys as it is for me.



## ABSTRACT

Growth of symbiotic legume hosts is P limited, because of the high energetic requirements associated with N<sub>2</sub> fixation. Attempts to overcome P deficiency in soils where legumes are grown involve addition of P-based fertilisers. However, these are produced from finite, non-renewable resources that could be exhausted in the next 50-80 years. For this and other prudent reasons, viable alternatives are sought that include producing genetically enhanced plants with better P use efficiency (PUE). There exist some inter- and intraspecific genetic variation for associated traits of PUE in various legumes and these will have to be exploited to realize the development of P efficient cultivars. With the advent of sophisticated molecular tools, good progress has been made to understand the molecular response of some common physiological and morphological functions observed under LP. The research aims here were to investigate the energy costs and the alternative metabolic routes associated with C and N metabolism under LP in legumes, which is very scant in literature. We also investigated the recovery responses of nodulated roots upon P alleviation. Consequently, improvement strategies to produce legume varieties for better adaptation in poor P soils are envisaged.

We have demonstrated varying degrees of sensitivity between the amide and ureide legume systems being investigated under short-term LP. The species-specific responses were ascribed to differences related to the agro-climatic origins, nodule morphologies and the type of N containing export product of the different legume



types. These different responses also underscore possible different regulatory mechanisms under LP. Lupins were probed further, because of its apparent tolerance to P deficiency. Lupin nodules had between 3 to 5-fold higher  $P_i$  concentrations compared with soybeans under LP and HP, respectively. The maintenance of  $P_i$  levels, as oppose to a decline in the total P pool, is discussed in relation to its role in maintaining  $N_2$  fixation in lupins. Under LP, an effective  $P_i$  recycling mechanism in nodules is proposed to occur via the induction of the PEPc-MDH-ME route. This route also enhanced the capacity of root nodules to procure high malate concentrations that are used to fuel bacteroid respiration and  $N_2$  fixation. Two distinctly different cMDH proteins, one corresponding to HP and another corresponding to LP, were identified. The high malate concentrations reported here are speculated to have arisen through LP-induced cMDH.

Metabolically available  $P_i$  decline developed gradually as P deficiency progressed. This coincided with a 15% decline in the %Ndfa. Moreover, under prolonged P deficiency the disproportionate synthesis of organic acids, most notably malate, that occurred at the expense of amino acids was proposed to account for this decline. The recovery in response to alleviation from LP involved alterations in the allocation of respiratory costs to growth and nutrient acquisition. Under LP, smaller nodules were formed and nodule metabolism revolved around accentuating PUE. Thus, there is considerable potential for improvement of P efficiency in legumes through manipulation of root:shoot partitioning.



**KEYWORDS**

Bacteroids

C-metabolism

Dicarboxylic acids

*Lupinus*

Malate

Nodules

Photosynthesis

P<sub>i</sub> deficiency

Nitrogen

N<sub>2</sub>-fixation

Respiration



UNIVERSITY *of the*  
WESTERN CAPE

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| aa                            | amino acids                               |
| AAT                           | aspartate amino transferase (E.C. 1.1.23) |
| ABC                           | ATP-binding cassette                      |
| AEC                           | adenylate energy charge                   |
| AI                            | alkaline invertase                        |
| Ala                           | alanine                                   |
| AMP                           | adenosine 5'- monophosphate               |
| ANOVA                         | analysis of variance                      |
| APs                           | acid phosphatases                         |
| ATP                           | adenosine 5'- triphosphate                |
| ARA                           | acetylene reduction assay                 |
| Asn                           | asparagines                               |
| Asp                           | aspartate                                 |
| BNF                           | biological nitrogen fixation              |
| °C                            | degrees celsius                           |
| <sup>14</sup> C               | radiolabelled carbon                      |
| CA                            | carbonic anhydrase (EC; 4.2.1.1)          |
| cMDH                          | cytosolic malate dehydrogenase            |
| <sup>14</sup> CO <sub>2</sub> | radiolabelled carbon dioxide              |
| Dct                           | dicarboxylate transport system            |
| dH <sub>2</sub> O             | distilled water                           |
| DIC                           | dissolved inorganic carbon                |

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| DTT          | 1,4 – dithiothreitol                                  |
| DW           | dry weight  |
| EDTA         | ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid                       |
| ESTs         | expressed sequence tags                               |
| EURS         | utilisation efficiency for rhizobial symbiosis        |
| FW           | fresh weight  |
| GOGAT        | glutamate synthase                                    |
| GS           | glutamine synthetase                                  |
| HB           | Haber-Bosch   |
| HPLC         | high performance liquid chromatography                |
| IRGA         | infrared gas analyser                                 |
| LDC          | less developed countries                              |
| LP           | low phosphate   |
| LSD          | least significant difference                          |
| LWR          | leaf weight ratio                                     |
| Mal          | malate  |
| MDH          | malate dehydrogenase                                  |
| NA           | <sup>15</sup> N natural abundance                     |
| (NADH)-GOGAT | glutamate synthase, reduced form                      |
| (NAD)-MDH    | malate dehydrogenase, oxidized form (EC 1.1.1.37)     |
| (NADH)-MDH   | malate dehydrogenase, reduced form (EC 1.1.1.37)      |
| (NAD)-ME     | malic enzyme (EC 1.1.1.40), cofactor in oxidized form |
| (NADH)-ME    | malic enzyme (EC 1.1.1.40), cofactor in reduced form  |



|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| NAD                  | $\beta$ – nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide                         |
| NADH                 | $\beta$ – nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, reduced form           |
| NADP                 | $\beta$ – nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate               |
| NADPH                | $\beta$ – nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate, reduced form |
| NCBI                 | National Center for Biotechnology Information                       |
| N.D.                 | not determined  |
| Ndfa                 | nitrogen derived from atmosphere                                    |
| neMDH                | nodule-enhanced malate dehydrogenase                                |
| NID                  | $^{15}\text{N}$ isotope dilution                                    |
| nt                   | nucleotide  |
| OAs                  | organic acids   |
| OAA                  | oxaloacetate  |
| PBM                  | peribacteroid membrane  |
| PBS                  | peribacteroid space   |
| PCR                  | polymerase chain reaction   |
| PEP                  | phospho <i>enol</i> pyruvate  |
| PEPc                 | phospho <i>enol</i> pyruvate carboxylase (EC 4.1.1.31)              |
| PHB                  | polyhydroxy-butyrates   |
| P <sub>i</sub>       | inorganic phosphate   |
| PK                   | pyruvate kinase (EC 2.7.1.40)                                       |
| (PN <sub>max</sub> ) | maximum net photosynthetic rate                                     |
| PUE                  | phosphate use efficiency  |
| PVPP                 | polyvinylpyrrolidone  |



|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| QTLs            | quantitative trait loci                   |
| RGR             | relative growth rate                      |
| RG <sub>w</sub> | growth respiration per unit dry weight    |
| RG <sub>t</sub> | growth respiration per unit time          |
| RM <sub>t</sub> | maintenance respiration per unit time     |
| RNA             | ribonucleic acid                          |
| RNase           | ribonuclease                              |
| RT              | reverse transcription                     |
| SE              | standard error                            |
| SNPs            | single nucleotide polymorphisms           |
| SNF             | symbiotic nitrogen fixation               |
| SPAR            | specific P absorption rate                |
| SPUR            | specific P utilisation rate               |
| sRNA            | small ribonucleic acid                    |
| SSA             | Sub-Saharan Africa                        |
| Suc             | sucrose                                   |
| Susy            | sucrose synthase                          |
| TCA             | trichloroacetic acid                      |
| TCA cycle       | tricarboxylic acid cycle                  |
| TE              | Tris-EDTA                                 |
| Tris            | 2-amino-2-(hydroxymethyl)-1,3-propanediol |
| W <sub>c</sub>  | construction costs                        |
| XDH             | xanthine dehydrogenase                    |

## BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH

Marcellous Remarque Le Roux was born of Daniel and Elizabeth Le Roux in Oudtshoorn, Western Cape, South Africa, on the 24<sup>th</sup> February 1978. He attended Sacred Heart Primary School and matriculated at Bridgton Senior Secondary School in 1995. He enrolled at the University of Stellenbosch in 1996 and obtained a BSc degree with Botany and Genetics as majors in 2000. He furthered his studies at the same institution, first completing a BSc (Hons.) in 2001 and immediately after, enrolling for an MSc (Plant biotechnology) in 2002. He obtained his MSc degree in 2005.



## CONTENT PAGE

### Table of contents

|                       |         |
|-----------------------|---------|
| Title Page            | i       |
| Key words             | ii      |
| Abstract              | iii     |
| Declaration           | v       |
| Acknowledgements      | vi-vii  |
| List of abbreviations | viii-x  |
| Content page          | xii-xvi |

| CHAPTER |   | Page |
|---------|---|------|
| 1.      | <b>General Introduction</b>                               | 1    |
| 1.1     | <b>Background</b>   | 2    |
| 1.2     | <b>Justification</b>                                      | 5    |
| 1.3     | <b>Aims</b>   | 7    |
| 1.4     | <b>References</b>   | 8    |
| 2       | <b>Literature review</b>                                  | 13   |
| 2.1     | <b>The role of legumes in sustainable agriculture</b>     | 14   |
| 2.1.1   | Problems associated with current agricultural practices   | 14   |
| 2.1.2   | Food security concerns                                    | 16   |
| 2.1.3   | Factors exacerbating food insecurities                    | 19   |
| 2.1.4   | Constraints to utilisation of legumes                     | 21   |
| 2.2     | <b>Food security: the situation in Sub-Saharan Africa</b> | 23   |
| 2.3     | <b>The importance of nitrogen provision by legumes</b>    | 26   |
| 2.4     | <b>Alternative uses for legumes</b>                       | 29   |
| 2.5     | <b>Legumes and rhizobia</b>                               | 29   |
| 2.5.1   | Rhizobial infection                                       | 29   |
| 2.5.2   | Nodule structure and function                             | 31   |



|             |  |    |
|-------------|--|----|
| <b>2.6</b>  | <b>P metabolism and root nodule symbiosis</b>  | 32 |
| 2.6.1       | Importance of P <sub>i</sub> in plant metabolism   | 32 |
| 2.6.2       | Adaptive strategies under P <sub>i</sub> deprivation   | 33 |
| 2.6.3       | Nodule metabolism and P <sub>i</sub>   | 35 |
| <b>2.7</b>  | <b>Trade-offs in a mutualistic symbiosis</b>   | 40 |
| 2.7.1       | C and N exchange during symbiosis  | 40 |
| 2.7.2       | The role of amino acid cycling in attaining symbiotic efficiency                               | 43 |
| 2.7.3       | Respiratory substrates for bacteroids in symbiosis   | 47 |
| <b>2.8</b>  | <b>Enzymes of malate metabolism</b>  | 50 |
| 2.8.1       | Malate dehydrogenase (MDH)   | 50 |
| 2.8.2       | Malic enzyme (ME)  | 52 |
| <b>2.9</b>  | <b>Carbon diversion and β-polyhydroxy-butyrate (PHB) metabolism</b>                            | 54 |
| <b>2.10</b> | <b>Other regulatory features of symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> reduction</b>                          | 57 |
| 2.10.1      | C-induced limitation of N <sub>2</sub> -fixation   | 57 |
| 2.10.2      | The O <sub>2</sub> paradox   | 58 |
| 2.10.3      | N feedback regulation of N <sub>2</sub> -fixation  | 59 |
| <b>2.11</b> | <b>Concluding Remarks</b>  | 60 |
| <b>2.12</b> | <b>References</b>  | 62 |
| <b>3.</b>   | <b>Nitrogen and carbon costs of soybean and lupin root systems during phosphate starvation</b> | 89 |
| <b>3.1</b>  | <b>Abstract</b>  | 90 |
| <b>3.2</b>  | <b>Introduction</b>  | 91 |
| <b>3.3</b>  | <b>Materials and methods</b>   | 92 |
| 3.3.1       | Plant material and growth conditions   | 92 |
| 3.3.2       | Photosynthesis   | 93 |
| 3.3.3       | P, N and C determination   | 94 |
| 3.3.4       | Construction cost and growth respiration   | 94 |
| 3.3.5       | Nitrogen fixation  | 95 |
| 3.3.6       | Amino acid and ureide concentrations   | 95 |
| 3.3.7       | Enzyme activities  | 95 |
| 3.3.8       | Statistical analysis   | 96 |



|            |   |     |
|------------|---|-----|
| <b>3.4</b> | <b>Results</b>  | 96  |
| 3.4.1      | Nodular P concentration and utilization efficiency  | 96  |
| 3.4.2      | Nodule respiration and photosynthesis   | 99  |
| 3.4.3      | Nitrogen metabolism   | 101 |
| <b>3.5</b> | <b>Discussion</b>   | 107 |
| <b>3.6</b> | <b>References</b>   | 111 |
| <b>4</b>   | <b>Detection of novel cytosolic malate dehydrogenases (MDH) in <i>Lupinus angustifolius</i></b>           | 116 |
| <b>4.1</b> | <b>Abstract</b>   | 117 |
| <b>4.2</b> | <b>Introduction</b>   | 118 |
| <b>4.3</b> | <b>Materials and methods</b>  | 120 |
| 4.3.1      | Plant material, growth conditions and harvesting  | 120 |
| 4.3.2      | Determination of $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  | 121 |
| 4.3.3      | Malate concentration and MDH activity   | 122 |
| 4.3.4      | RNA isolation   | 124 |
| 4.3.5      | Semi-quantitative reverse transcription (RT)-PCR  | 124 |
| 4.3.6      | DNA sequencing and cloning  | 126 |
| 4.3.7      | Bioinformatics and statistical analysis   | 127 |
| <b>4.4</b> | <b>Results</b>  | 128 |
| 4.4.1      | P concentrations and $^{14}\text{C}$ incorporation  | 128 |
| 4.4.2      | Nitrogen fixation   | 128 |
| 4.4.3      | Identification of two independent MDH cDNAs   | 130 |
| 4.4.4      | Homology to other known MDH proteins  | 136 |
| <b>4.5</b> | <b>Discussion</b>   | 140 |
| <b>4.6</b> | <b>References</b>   | 144 |
| <b>5.</b>  | <b>Organic acid accumulation may inhibit <math>\text{N}_2</math> fixation in P-stressed lupin nodules</b> | 150 |
| <b>5.1</b> | <b>Summary</b>  | 151 |
| <b>5.2</b> | <b>Introduction</b>   | 152 |

|            |  |     |
|------------|--|-----|
| <b>5.3</b> | <b>Materials and methods</b>   | 154 |
| 5.3.1      | Plant growth conditions  | 154 |
| 5.3.2      | Inorganic phosphate determination  | 155 |
| 5.3.3      | Protein extraction and determination   | 156 |
| 5.3.4      | Enzyme assays  | 156 |
| 5.3.5      | Whole plant <sup>14</sup> C incorporation  | 158 |
| 5.3.6      | <sup>14</sup> C fractionation  | 158 |
| 5.3.7      | C costs determinations   | 159 |
| 5.3.8      | Measurement of nodule respiration  | 159 |
| 5.3.9      | Nitrogenase activity   | 160 |
| 5.3.10     | Statistical analysis   | 160 |
| <b>5.4</b> | <b>Results</b>   | 161 |
| 5.4.1      | Growth and respiration following P starvation  | 161 |
| 5.4.2      | Nitrogen metabolism  | 162 |
| 5.4.3      | C metabolism   | 165 |
| 5.4.4      | Nodular <sup>14</sup> C fractionation and respiration  | 165 |
| <b>5.5</b> | <b>Discussion</b>  | 170 |
| <b>5.6</b> | <b>Acknowledgements</b>  | 173 |
| <b>5.7</b> | <b>References</b>  | 174 |
| <b>6.</b>  | <b>Physiological responses to and the recovery from P deficiency in <i>Lupinus angustifolius</i></b> | 182 |
| <b>6.1</b> | <b>Abstract</b>  | 183 |
| <b>6.2</b> | <b>Introduction</b>  | 184 |
| <b>6.3</b> | <b>Materials and methods</b>   | 187 |
| 6.3.1      | Plant growth conditions  | 187 |
| 6.3.2      | Harvesting and nutrient analysis   | 189 |
| 6.3.3      | Measurements of CO <sub>2</sub> assimilation   | 189 |
| 6.3.4      | Calculations of δN <sub>15</sub>   | 190 |
| 6.3.5      | C costs determinations   | 191 |
| 6.3.6      | Statistical analysis   | 192 |
| <b>6.4</b> | <b>Results</b>   | 193 |
| 6.4.1      | Symbiotic nitrogen fixation and dry matter yield   | 193 |
| 6.4.2      | Nutritional analyses and use efficiencies  | 198 |
| 6.4.3      | Respiratory costs  | 202 |
| 6.4.4      | Photosynthetic parameters  | 203 |

|       |   |     |
|-------|---|-----|
| 6.5   | <b>Discussion</b>   | 206 |
| 6.6   | <b>References</b>   | 212 |
| 7.    | <b>General discussion</b>                                 | 218 |
| 7.1   | <b>Overview</b>   | 219 |
| 7.2.1 | <b>Key findings</b>                                       | 221 |
| 7.2.2 | <b>Measurements of plant-based N<sub>2</sub> fixation</b> | 225 |
| 7.3   | <b>Future work</b>  | 226 |
| 7.4   | <b>Concluding remarks</b>                                 | 228 |
| 7.4   | <b>References</b>   | 229 |



UNIVERSITY *of the*  
WESTERN CAPE



# CHAPTER 1

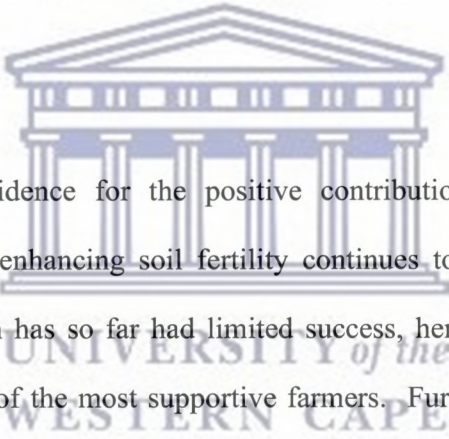


UNIVERSITY OF THE  
**General Introduction**  
WESTERN CAPE



## 1.1 Background

It is acknowledged that leguminous plants encompass key characteristics that make them suitable to be considered to help advance efforts towards sustainable agricultural practices (Graham & Vance, 2003). The symbiosis of legumes with rhizobia enables leguminous host plants, which comprise some economically important crops, including bean plants, peas, lentils and others to grow in soils with little available nitrogen (N). The rhizobial endosymbionts capable of N<sub>2</sub> fixation, known as bacteroids, are housed in newly formed root nodules. In here, bacteroids are buffered against any fluctuations in the environmental conditions their legume hosts might be experiencing.



Even though evidence for the positive contribution of legumes in crop rotations and in enhancing soil fertility continues to increase, breeding for better N<sub>2</sub> fixation has so far had limited success, hence the poor acceptance from even some of the most supportive farmers. Furthermore, most legumes studied to date have shown highly variable traits related to N<sub>2</sub> fixation. Thus, breeding for enhanced N<sub>2</sub> fixation may require a more holistic approach in conjunction with other factors associated with nutrient deficiencies, enhancing tolerance, etc. (Graham & Vance, 2000).

Moreover, nutrient deficiency is of particular relevance, since it is considered that efforts to improve N<sub>2</sub> fixation through appropriate genetic means, will all be in vain if viable solutions to addressing soil fertility are not sought first (Sanchez, 2002). Mineral stress is regarded as critical in understanding the

causal effects of global climate changes on plant growth in affected soils (Lynch & St Clair, 2004). For this reason, several research efforts have tried to evaluate the relationship between various mineral nutrients, most notably inorganic phosphorus ( $P_i$ ) and  $N_2$  fixation (Sa & Israel, 1991; Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998; Olivera *et al.*, 2004). Nitrogen fixation in the various legumes studied to date is severely compromised by inadequate levels of  $P_i$  in soils (Vadéz *et al.*, 1996; Drevon & Hartwig, 1997). Inorganic phosphorus is known to regulate bio-energetic processes in plants by being one of the substrates for photo- and oxidative phosphorylation. Lack of  $P_i$  has been found to decrease the levels of ATP and ADP, as well as the adenylate energy charge in roots (Rychter *et al.*, 1992). In root nodules,  $P_i$  is proposed to be involved in C metabolism and energy turnover, which may be of pivotal importance to maintaining high rates of  $N_2$  fixation (Schulze, 2004).

Furthermore, it emerged from several research studies looking at the effects of P stress on the primary metabolism of plants that under limiting P concentrations as observed for such studies, alternative non-phosphorylating pathways may be induced to conserve  $P_i$  and partially maintain cellular metabolism/function (Duff *et al.*, 1989; Theodorou & Plaxton, 1993). One such point of divergence, under P deficiency, is at the branched nexus of phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP). At this point, phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase (PEPc), malate dehydrogenase (MDH) and malic enzyme (ME) sequentially process phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP), presumably when  $P_i$  starvation is induced. Whilst the PEPc-MDH-ME alternative route may become increasingly important over the conventional pyruvate kinase (PK) route,



under  $P_i$ -deficient conditions, it also represents a key branch-point where N and C metabolism diverts in root nodules of legumes (Vance & Gantt 1992; Vance *et al.*, 1994). PEPc contributes a significant portion of C for assimilation of the export products of legumes, particularly those that export amides in their xylem stream. It is thought for amide-exporting legume types, that between 25 to 30% of C may be re-assimilated via the PEPc reaction (Vance *et al.*, 1985). In addition, the PEPc-MDH-ME alternative route may siphon some C to dicarboxylic acid synthesis in an attempt to supplement the TCA cycle, under the imposed restricted conditions of P deficiency.

Nodules are known to be strong sinks for P and this may be related to the role of P in C metabolism and energy turnover (Schulze, 2004). Colebatch *et al.*, (2004) have proposed a model, which demonstrates the capacity of bacteroids as active  $P_i$  scavengers, presumably in an effort to maintain  $N_2$  fixation efficiency. This P scavenging 'tactic' asserted by the bacteroids may fulfil an important function, which is to activate/induce the PEPc-MDH-ME pathway to produce more malate, which is the preferred carbon source for symbiotic rhizobia (Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990; Schulze *et al.*, 2002). This may also corroborate observations of higher P concentrations in nodules than in either shoots or roots (Jakobsen, 1985; Israel, 1987; Israel, 1993; Tang *et al.*, 2001). Furthermore, at least the bacteroid fraction of nodules of the symbiosis may be able to maintain sufficient adenylate energy charge (AEC), under P stress, demonstrating its inherent capacity to proceed with  $N_2$  fixation relatively unperturbed (Sa & Israel, 1991). Regardless of P concentration in the



subtending host root, bacteroids secrete phosphatases capable of solubilizing bound P, into their surrounding environment (Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998).

## 1.2 Justification

Notwithstanding the major inroads made into unmasking the role of dicarboxylic acids in symbiosis, there still seem to be major deficiencies in our understanding of nutrient flux in and out of legume nodules. The most obvious reason for this is that measurements assessing transport of nutrients across the symbiosome have been achieved with isolated bacteroids, which have been disconnected from their 'in-house' regulatory features and tend to give a misrepresentation of what actually happens *in vivo* (Lodwig & Poole, 2003). In addition, the tendency to extrapolate from free-living bacteria of the same genera known to go into symbiosis effectively may be null and void as these have been shown to respond indifferently to the same conditions (McKay *et al.*, 1988). Therefore, such results should be viewed with caution, despite having illuminated our understanding of some intricacies of rhizobia-legume symbiosis (Lodwig & Poole, 2003).

Leading from this, the legume-rhizobia symbiosis, which has been widely viewed as a simplistic exchange of nitrogen (N) for carbon (C), imparts a heavy C tax on the plant partner. However, this notion of a simplistic exchange has also recently been dispelled and it was proposed that a more complex interplay, involving some amino acids or derivatives thereof from the plant host, exists (Prell & Poole, 2006). Moreover, this exchange of metabolites has to be negotiated under severely compromised conditions, most

notably within narrow limits of oxygen ( $O_2$ ) (Hunt & Layzell, 1993), whilst rhizobia need to maintain high rates of fixation in order to benefit their legume host. This is because nitrogenase ( $N_{ase}$ ) may be irreversibly damaged at high  $O_2$  concentrations, inevitably resulting in low N-transfer to legume host, thus effectively nullifying the benefits of the symbiosis. The plant fraction of symbiosis is particularly affected by any such perturbations, i.e.  $O_2$  restriction and P limitation, in primary metabolism and it is thought that under these prevailing conditions C is delivered to bacteroids in the form of dicarboxylic acids, most notably malate, via the aforementioned PEPc-MDH-ME alternative route (Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990; Vance & Heichel, 1991; Schulze *et al.*, 2002). Malate uptake has been correlated with the rate of respiration of bacteroids and  $O_2$  uptake (Li *et al.*, 2001). The high malate flux is also the result of an MDH iso-enzyme shown to be more prevalent in nodules as opposed to other tissue (Miller *et al.*, 1998). This nodule-enhanced expression of MDH may account for as much as 50% of the total malate pool in root nodules, compared with the 20% contribution by a cytosolic MDH, in *Medicago sativa* (Miller *et al.*, 1998).

Highlighted in the discussion above are several crucial features impinging on the efficiency of  $N_2$  fixation. As stated above root nodules appear to be at the mercy of the plant partner, even though the actual centre for  $N_2$  fixation may be relatively safely tucked away on the inner core of the nodule. However, nodules may still be negatively affected by various stresses that affect the legume host. The most noteworthy of these is  $P_i$ , because of its integral place in C- and energy metabolism. Although the effects of P on  $N_2$  fixation have



been extensively studied there remain some crucial gaps, which need resolving before any headway is to be made in manipulating the system for future benefits. In addition, most of these aforementioned studies evaluating the role of P in symbiosis have assessed its impact at steady state conditions where the legume host would have adapted to its conditions. One would only tentatively be able to venture an answer to the question of where primary metabolic regulation takes place, whilst the response to P stress would be species specific and will also depend on the duration of the stress (Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002).

### 1.3 Aims

The one question pertinent to this study was: how will nodulated legumes alter their metabolism of organic acids (OAs) and nitrogen (N) in response to P deficiency? An overarching aim is to ascertain the responses to P deficiency during short-term (14 d) as opposed to prolonged (24 d) exposure.

These questions were addressed by assessing the following:

- i) What role do the various phosphorus fractions (e.g.  $P_i$ ,  $PP_i$ , total P) have in relation to sustaining symbiotic nitrogen fixation (SNF)? This will be addressed in the two dominant legume types, i.e. amide-exporting lupins versus ureide-exporting soybeans.
- ii) Secondly, it is known that nodules accumulate high levels of OAs, in particular malate. Therefore, the role and regulation of malate metabolism in nodules, under P deficiency, was assessed.
- iii) Finally, the plasticity of physiological responses to P deficiency during alleviation of P deficiency in nodulated root systems was examined.



#### 1.4 References

Al-Niemi TS, Kahn ML, McDermott TR (1997) Phosphorus metabolism in the bean-*Rhizobium tropici* symbiosis. *Plant Physiology* 113: 1233-1242.

Al-Niemi TS, Kahn ML, McDermott TR (1998) Phosphorus uptake by bean nodules. *Plant and Soil* 198: 71-78.

Colebatch G, Desbrosses G, Ott T, Krusell L, Montanari O, Kloska S, Kopka J, Udvardi M (2004) Global changes in transcription orchestrate metabolic differentiation during symbiotic nitrogen fixation in *Lotus japonicus*. *Plant Journal* 39: 487-512.

Drevon J-J, Hartwig UA (1997) Phosphorus deficiency increases the argon-induced decline of nodule nitrogenase activity in soybean and alfalfa. *Planta* 201: 463-469.



UNIVERSITY of the  
WESTERN CAPE

Duff SMG, Moorhead GBG, Lefebvre DD, Plaxton WC (1989) Purification and characterisation of a phosphoenolpyruvate phosphatase from *Brassica nigra* suspension cells. *Plant Physiology* 90: 1275-1278.

Graham PH, Vance CP (2000) Nitrogen fixation in perspective: an overview of research and extension needs. *Field Crops Research* 65: 93-106.

Graham PH, Vance CP (2003) Legumes: importance and constraints to greater use. *Plant Physiology* 131: 872-877.

Høgh-Jensen H, Schjoerring JK, Soussana J-F (2002) The influence of phosphorus deficiency on growth and nitrogen fixation of white clover plants. *Annals of Botany* 90: 745-753.

Hunt S, Layzell DB (1993) Gas exchange of legume nodules and the regulation of nitrogenase activity. *Annual Review of Plant Physiology* 44: 483-511.

Israel DW (1987) Investigation of the role of phosphorus in symbiotic dinitrogen fixation. *Plant Physiology* 84: 835-840.

Israel DW (1993) Symbiotic dinitrogen fixation and host-plant growth during development of and recovery from phosphorus deficiency. *Physiologia Plantarum* 88: 294-300.

Jakobsen I (1985) The role of phosphorus in nitrogen fixation by young pea plants (*Pisum sativum*). *Physiologia Plantarum* 64: 190-196.

Lodwig E, Poole P (2003) Metabolism of *Rhizobium* bacteroids. *Critical Reviews in Plant Science* 22: 37-78.

Lynch JP, St Clair SB (2004) Mineral stress: the missing link in understanding how global climate change will affect plants in real world soils. *Field Crops Research* 90: 101-115.



McKay IA, Dilworth MJ, Glenn AR (1988) C<sub>4</sub>-dicarboxylate metabolism in free-living and bacteroid forms of *Rhizobium leguminosarum* MNF3841. *Journal of General Microbiology* 134: 1433-1440.

Miller SS, Driscoll BT, Gregerson RG, Gantt JS, Vance CP (1998) Alfalfa malate dehydrogenase (MDH): molecular cloning and characterization of five different forms reveals a unique nodule-enhanced MDH. *Plant Journal* 15: 173-184.

Olivera M, Tejera N, Iribarne C, Ocaña A, Lluch C (2004) Growth, nitrogen fixation and ammonium assimilation in common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*): effect of phosphorus. *Physiologia Plantarum* 121: 498-505.

Prell J, Poole P (2006) Metabolic changes of rhizobia in legume nodules. *Trends in Microbiology* 14: 161-168.

Rosendahl L, Vance CP, Pedersen WB (1990) Products of dark CO<sub>2</sub> fixation in pea root nodules support bacteroid metabolism. *Plant Physiology* 93: 12-19.

Rychter AM, Chauveau M, Bomsel JL, Lance C (1992) The effect of phosphate deficiency on mitochondrial activity and adenylate levels in bean roots. *Plant Physiology* 84: 80-86.



Sa T-M, Israel DW (1991) Energy status and functioning of phosphorus-deficient soybean nodules. *Plant Physiology* 97: 928-935.

Schulze J, Tesfaye M, Litjens RHM, Bucciarelli B, Trepp G, Miller S, Samac D, Allan D, Vance CP (2002) Malate plays a central role in plant nutrition. *Plant and Soil* 247: 133-139.

Schulze J (2004) How are nitrogen fixation rates regulated in legumes? *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science* 167: 125-137.

Sanchez PA (2002) Soil fertility and hunger in Africa. *Science* 295: 2019-2020.

Tang C, Hinsinger P, Drevon JJ, Jaillard B (2001) Phosphorus deficiency impairs early nodule functioning and enhances proton release in roots of *Medicago truncatula* L. *Annals of Botany* 88: 131-138.

Theodorou ME, Plaxton, WC (1993) Metabolic adaptation of plant respiration to nutritional phosphate deprivation. *Plant Physiology* 101: 339-334.

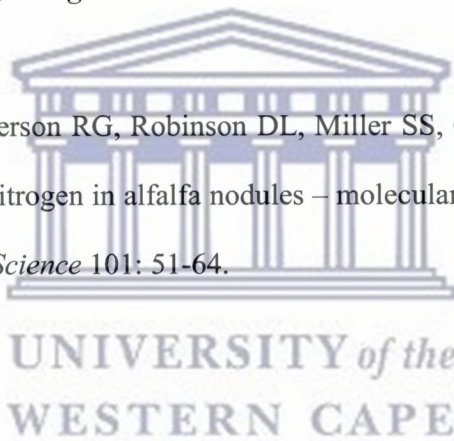
Vadez V, Beck DP, Lasso JH, Drevon J-J (1996) Utilization of the acetylene reduction assay to screen for tolerance of symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> fixation to limiting P nutrition in common bean. *Physiologia Plantarum* 99: 227-232.

Vance CP, Boylan KLM, Maxwell CA, Heichel GH, Hardman LL (1985) Transport and partitioning of CO<sub>2</sub> fixed by root nodules of ureide and amide producing legumes. *Plant Physiology* 78: 774-778.

Vance CP, Heichel GH (1991) Carbon in N<sub>2</sub> fixation: limitation or exquisite adaptation. *Annual Review of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* 42: 373-392.

Vance CP, Gantt JS (1992) Control of nitrogen and carbon metabolism in root-nodules. *Physiologia Plantarum* 85: 266-274.

Vance CP, Gregerson RG, Robinson DL, Miller SS, Gantt JS (1994) Primary assimilation of nitrogen in alfalfa nodules – molecular features of the enzymes involved. *Plant Science* 101: 51-64.



## CHAPTER 2



**Literature Review**  
UNIVERSITY *of the*  
WESTERN CAPE



## **2.1 The role of legumes in sustainable agriculture**

### **2.1.1 Problems associated with current agricultural practices**

Globally, agriculture has entered a phase where increased amounts of energy expenditure have little influence over any further increases in crop yields (Tomczak, 2006). Since 1960, the global population more than doubled, whereas world agricultural area per person decreased two-fold (Tilman *et al.*, 2001). This situation may have its roots in the Green Revolution, which dates back to the early 1900's. Through this, crop yields were increased dramatically due to the extensive use of fertilisers, rich in nitrogen (N). In general, crop yields were increased up to 50%, whereas 80% yield increases were implemented for cereals (Smil, 1991). The impact of N-rich fertiliser production on agricultural development cannot be denied and the exponential growth of the human populace bears testimony to this successful period in agriculture (Smil, 1997, 1999). It is no exaggeration to say that N is arguably one of the most limiting factors for global food crop production and inevitably human growth (Tilman, 1999).

Fertiliser is produced through the energy-intensive Haber-Bosch (HB) process (Cheng, 2008), which produces about 80 metric ton (Mt) ammoniac ( $\text{NH}_3$ ) annually and accounts for 30% of the energy cost in modern-day agriculture (Graham & Vance, 2000). Non-renewable raw materials, most notably mineral oil and gas, are utilised in fertiliser production, with further expenditures incurred when fertiliser has to be transported to farms that often lack reliable infrastructure, i.e. good roads and so forth, particularly in less developed countries (LDC). Thus, fertilizer production, transportation and

other agrochemical costs are inextricably linked to similar increases in the oil price, because these are produced using the same oil-based energy sources. To offset high production costs, suppliers often increase the price of fertilisers.

Therefore, farmers, especially in LDC, do not purchase fertiliser even though there may be an acute need to boost crop growth (Sanchez, 2010). For this reason, the adoption of revolutionary industrial-scale mechanisation and access to sufficient fertiliser, to boost crop productivity is still eluding most farmers in the developing world. To date, disparities among farmers of the developed and developing worlds persist and in many instances are made worse by current trends in trade policies. Often smallholder farmers are not active participants in such technological developments, but rather passive recipients of its final products (Puente-Rodriguez, 2009). Human dependency on finite resources, e.g. oil and gas, has created a futile cycle, which is not sustainable. Unless there is a drastic shift away from the current patterns of production (and consumption) and a purposeful move towards resource-conserving practices and technologies, mankind will not be able to sustain their agricultural needs (Mafongoya *et al.*, 2006; Østergård *et al.*, 2009)

Pressures of global food markets, but also poor farm management practices, mean that fertiliser is often applied in excess of that required by crops for maximal growth. Effectively crops only absorb about half of the applied N in the first year of application, whilst most is lost through nitrification and leaching (Sanchez, 2010). Consequently, the run-off from agricultural land



pollutes groundwater, subsequently causing the eutrophication of rivers and lakes (Carpenter *et al.*, 1998; Beman *et al.*, 2005).

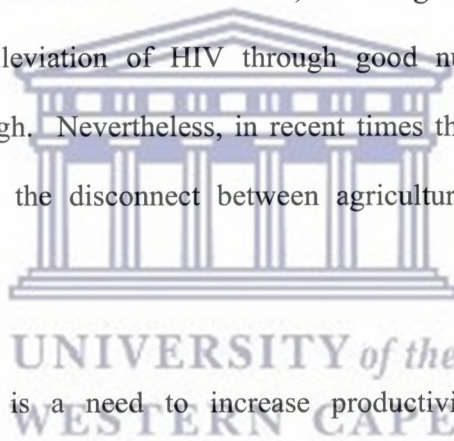
The aforementioned Haber-Bosch process may also contribute significantly to the present day global warming phenomenon, through liberating major greenhouse gases, such as CO<sub>2</sub>, methane and nitrous oxide, as by-products. (Erisman *et al.*, 2008) There is no refuting the fact that the demand on modern agriculture has increased (Tilman *et al.*, 2001). However, mankind's attempts to increase food production, have also to consider conservation of land used for such purposes so as to prevent it from becoming barren due to insufficient amounts of nutrients to sustain crop growth and consequently rendering the land unfit for use (Vitousek *et al.*, 2009).

### **2.1.2 Food security concerns**

One of the eight developmental goals envisaged by all of the member states of the United Nations (UN) at the start of this millennium, is to half the proportion of people who suffer from hunger by the year 2015 (Delmer, 2005). Efforts to rectify this have been met with stern challenges in recent years when towards the end of 2008, high food and fuel prices nurtured fears of food insecurity for many, especially in less developed countries (LDC). Uncertainties surrounding food security were propelled further to the forefront on the political agendas of most governments of the world when a subsequent economic crisis in 2009 hit financial markets.

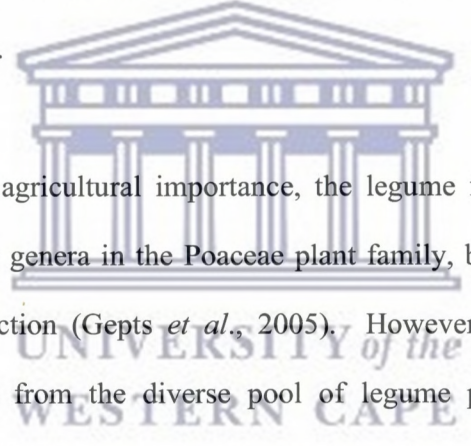


Food security, often equated to insufficient food intake, is multifactorial, with several factors (e.g. buying power; diet; etc.) interplaying at one stage or another. The question of food security is not just one of not having enough to eat, but also relates to an imbalanced diet. For instance, many people from LDC, most notably Africa and Asia, are reliant on high calorie food sources, e.g. maize and rice, which over the long haul may contribute significantly to health issues. Focus needs to be on nutrition security, rather than food security and increased food production *per se* (Shetty, 2010). In turn, good nutrition is also strongly correlated to good health and may contribute to effective treatments for various diseases, including HIV (Shetty, 2010). The basis for the alleviation of HIV through good nutrition remains largely unfounded, though. Nevertheless, in recent times there have been incessant pleas to redress the disconnect between agriculture and health (Sanchez, 2010).



Although there is a need to increase productivity of farmlands, it is increasingly becoming an issue of growing food crops that will supply the nutritional requirements to the end user in a well-balanced manner. In addition to providing food and/or feed, crops considered for cultivation should have multiple uses not just that pertaining to their core function in order to minimise wastage. To this end, legume crops that are capable of forming root symbioses with rhizobia, which release a virtually free nitrogen (N) source to the legume host, are ideal and warrant consideration. The N 'fixed' is ultimately converted into plant biomass rich in protein, which forms the basis of legumes as feed and food sources for animals and humans alike (Graham &

Vance, 2003). Thus, legumes hold the potential to address problems related to nutrient deficiencies, amongst other things and critically contribute to enriching soils through the N rich plant matter left after harvesting. Legumes used as intercrops or in rotations are known to relay benefits to subsequent growing crops (Stern, 1993). These capabilities infer to legumes the potential to rehabilitate depleted soils through N enrichment. Thus, legumes are self-sufficient at acquiring N through symbiosis under optimal conditions and can grow in soils that have little or no available N, consequently reducing the need for excessive application of N fertilizers. In fact, any residual N in soils may be detrimental to the process of symbiotic nitrogen fixation (SNF) (Carroll & Mathews, 1990).



With regard to agricultural importance, the legume family at present plays second fiddle to genera in the Poaceae plant family, based on area harvested and total production (Gepts *et al.*, 2005). However, this is anticipated to change as it is from the diverse pool of legume plants that it is hoped agriculture will draw as current agricultural practices are compelled to reform drastically in the face of challenges related to global warming, decline in arable land and currently high external inputs to increase productivity (Kennedy & Cocking, 1997). Therefore, farmers are encouraged to grow legumes as intercrops, cover crops, or in rotation with 'traditional crops' such as cereals and in this way lessen the burden of systems relying heavily on mineral fertilisers to increase productivity.



### 2.1.3 Factors exacerbating food insecurities

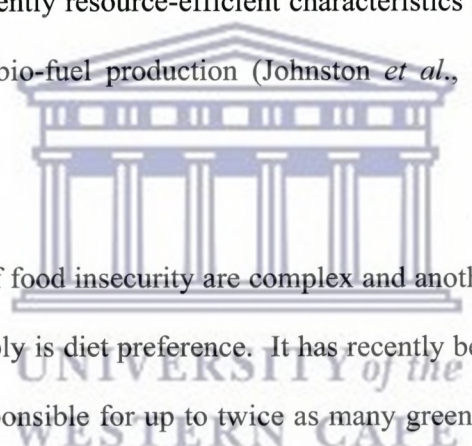
A number of factors negate attempts to increase food production including population growth, global warming (and all its associated effects), declining renewable resources, soil degradation due to overuse, extensive fertiliser usage and the practice of tilling (Doös, 1994). The world population is steadily increasing and is set to peak at 9 billion in the not too distant future (Tilman *et al.*, 2001). The carrying capacity of the environment, that is the number of people it can potentially support, be it via land acreage for food production and/or living, is increasingly diminishing.

With regard to food production, agriculture will have to accelerate the production of food if any headway is to be made in mitigating the effects of potential global food shortages. If not, restricted food production would invariably lead to higher food prices and place the health and inevitably the lives of the majority of people especially in LDC at risk as they are bound to succumb to malnutrition. High food prices in conjunction with declining food supplies have been at the centre of recent upheavals in large parts of several LDC, but also a handful of other more developed countries (Vidal, 2007). Food trading has suffered tremendously in the wake of this, with the majority of exporters inclined to reduce the export of some important staples so as to safeguard themselves against a shortfall in terms of food provision to their own citizens (Vidal, 2007).

Another important and radical recent development, potentially impacting on the food insecurity of millions, especially in the LDC, is growing important



food staples for bio-fuel. Bio-fuels are touted as a solution to rising fuel prices, growing energy demands and the need to curb emissions of greenhouse gases. However, conservative estimation suggests that some of the more common bio-fuel crops (e.g. maize, wheat) are not always less efficient in terms of their demands on resources (De Vries *et al.*, 2010). For critiques of the practice of converting already scarce arable agricultural lands for the purpose of growing bio-fuel crops on it, it is considered that this is essentially diverting the expenditure away from food production and distribution efforts, which could serve the larger populace better. It is proposed that non-food crops with inherently resource-efficient characteristics may be more suited for the purpose of bio-fuel production (Johnston *et al.*, 2009; De Vries *et al.*, 2010).

The logo of the University of the Western Cape is a faint watermark in the center of the page. It features a classical building facade with a pediment and several columns. Below the building, the text 'UNIVERSITY of the WESTERN CAPE' is written in a serif font.

The dynamics of food insecurity are complex and another key driving force of global food supply is diet preference. It has recently been proposed that one's diet may be responsible for up to twice as many greenhouse gas emissions as driving a vehicle about 19 000 km with 9 l/100 km petrol usage (Trivedi, 2008). Red meat and dairy products, which constitute approximately one third of humanity's protein intake, emerged as the most emissions-intensive foods due to the number of stages involved from production to processing. The projected increase in the global population and demands for diets richer in meat by a wealthier populace are projected to double global food demand by 2050 (Tilman *et al.*, 2001). This is despite associated problems relating to cardiovascular disease with over indulging in animal foods high in fat (Sinha *et al.*, 2009).

A recent report by the Food Climate Research Network was critical of meat diets and went as far to suggest that governments need to enforce rations of meat to be taken by consumers so as to prevent dire climate change events (Jowit, 2008). The report noted that awareness-raising campaigns would no longer suffice to effect difficult changes regarding people's diet preferences. It is therefore vital that humans balance their dietary preferences so that they consume less meat (Popkin, 2009). In this regard, nutritionists and environmentalists advocate plant-based proteins, simply because they believe these proteins to be healthier and normally not detrimental to the environment (Guillon & Champ, 2002).

#### **2.1.4 Constraints to utilisation of legumes**

The adoption of legumes has been tentatively pursued even though literature is strewn with evidence of its benefits for cropping systems and legume crop yields, for the most part, are still lagging behind cereal crop production initiatives. Several environmental and biological factors impact negatively on the performance of legume-*Rhizobium* symbioses in cropping systems. These range from soil acidity, nutrient deficiency and toxicity to the genetic potential of the organisms involved and how they interact with components of the environment (Bohloul *et al.*, 1992). Predictably, attempts to improve nitrogen fixation by legume hosts, still prove to be difficult, in part because the mutualism exists between two diverse groups of organisms, which have evolved a finely tuned relationship to make the benefits tangible to both partners involved. Indeed, responses to the array of stresses experienced, may



affect the partners involved differently. Thus, there needs to be an understanding of how changes to any one of the symbiotic partners in the legume-*Rhizobium* association are impeding on the efficiency of the mutualism as a means to satisfy the needs for both partners.

Most cereal crops do not form any integral collaborative associations of any kind, certainly not to the extent that legumes do, and therefore any improvement to such crop characteristics as increased vigour and yield, normally only has to consider the plant. Although massive strides have been achieved in understanding numerous leguminous host plant systems, the successes of biotechnological innovations have been hindered in part by the indifferent response to manipulation of the two partners involved. It has long been realized that in order to sustain legume production and stimulate the expanded use of legumes in cropping systems, there is a need to increase legume yield further (Sinclair, 2004). Recent advances made by molecular tools to improve N<sub>2</sub> fixation have not amounted to much in the field. Irrespective, the improvement of N<sub>2</sub> fixation through genetic manipulation may not come to its full potential unless issues of soil fertility are addressed first (Sanchez, 2002).

Thus, notwithstanding the challenges mentioned, legumes should form an integral part of progressive thinking strategies to assure a sufficient, secure and equitable global food supply (Tilman *et al.*, 2001). Current improvement strategies are progressively shifting towards reducing input, while simultaneously optimizing output (Østergård *et al.*, 2009). Alternative food



crops considered should be nutritious and definitely sustainable over a long period, a dual role, which legumes clearly fulfil. Thus, the renewed enthusiasm with which legume-based research has been adopted has everything to do with the sustainability practices it encompasses and the holistic approach needed in agriculture to address issues relating to diminishing renewable resources (Cannon *et al.*, 2009). It seems a logical extension then, to entertain the idea of legume usage to supplement diets of many malnourished individuals in the developing world.

## **2.2 Food security: the situation in Sub-Saharan Africa**

The situation on the African continent with regard to food production capabilities is particularly cumbersome, because although Africa is regarded as being rich in resources it lags in progressive development initiatives unlike other underdeveloped countries. The population in Africa has reached one billion, roughly one seventh of the global population and the majority live in rural areas, not conducive to commercial agriculture (2009 World Population Data Sheet). This can be ascribed to the high birth rate, which is double (5.3) that of the global average of 2.6 children per woman (2009 World Population Data Sheet). This rate of population expansion is bound to strain food security issues in the region. In general, about one quarter of children in developing countries are chronically underweight because of under nourishment as it is recognised that some of the first casualties of an impoverished lifestyle are protein and vegetables (Sheeran, 2008). Thus, an imminent nutritional crisis is at hand, which would have dire consequences for children and their development (Sheeran, 2008). Evidence is fast emerging that early

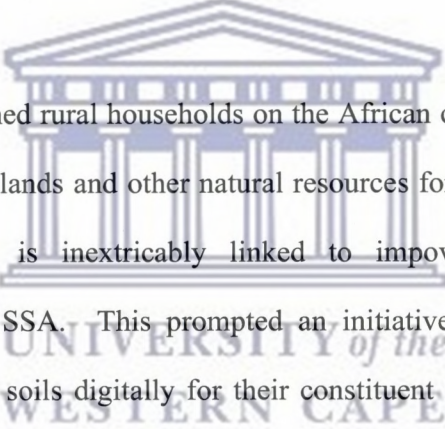
malnutrition damages intellectual development and productivity irreversibly (Ruel & Hodinott, 2008).

Legume crops are of paramount importance to protein deficient food diets of much of the rural and urban populations of the developing world and the cultivation thereof as food staples extends into marginal areas, even more so than it does in mainstream agriculture. Subsistence farmers in Africa generally cultivate grain-, forage- and tree legumes on marginal lands but have to contend with low yields due to soil depletion of important nutrients for growth (Dakora & Keya, 1997). Leguminous trees of the genera *Sesbania*, *Tephrosia*, *Crotalaria* and others are interplanted as fallows during dry seasons alongside young maize seedlings. The quantities of N accumulated (typically 100 to 200 kg N) through N<sub>2</sub> fixation, during short- to long term, are as much as that applied as fertiliser in developed countries (Keyser & Li, 1992; Ledgard & Steele, 1992). These high N concentrations contribute to increased maize yields and merit the use of legumes as an economically sound approach to subsistence farming in Africa (Graham & Vance, 2000). By virtue of incorporating legumes into their farmlands, smallholder farmers are at the forefront of innovative ways of addressing soil fertility replenishment. Moreover, rural communities have already inadvertently become key role players at managing their own food security by starting to grow vital alternative food crops, such as legumes.

The problem for SSA, but also Africa as a whole, is that it represents the last region of the world where per capita food production has remained stagnant



over the past 40 years (Sanchez, 2002). This is in spite of the fact that agriculture engages over 70% of all Africans, most of who are women. Insufficient food production in SSA has direct bearing on food security and hence, farming practices in Africa have come into sharp focus. Several research and development projects are underway to restore some confidence back in agricultural development in Africa, which has been neglected for a number of decades. The higher priority envisaged for agricultural development in African countries saw leaders commit themselves to increase their allocation of their national budgets to agricultural development by up to 10% (Ngongi, 2008).



The aforementioned rural households on the African continent depend heavily on marginal farmlands and other natural resources for their livelihoods. Poor food production is inextricably linked to impoverished soils that are characteristic of SSA. This prompted an initiative early in 2009 to start mapping African soils digitally for their constituent nutrient content, type of soil and pH (Rouwé, 2009). It is hoped that this will guide decision-making with regard to how to manage agricultural soils better for the purpose of preserving them for long-term use.

Impoverished soils arise through the practise of removing in excess of what is put in by conventional means, which in developing countries is normally either through manure or fertiliser. Despite the innate ability of nodulated legumes to accumulate high concentrations of N during pod filling (most of which may be removed during harvesting) a net depletion may occur when



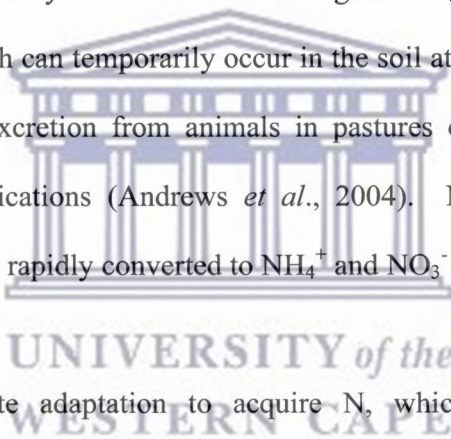
more N is removed than what is provided by the symbiosis (Al-Falih, 2002). Thus, under subsistence farming conditions this will over time exacerbate the problem of soil fertility depletion. Depletion of soil fertility is the single most important factor cited to hinder the adoption of genetically improved varieties (Sanchez, 2002). Although Africa has an unsurpassed diversity in micro-ecologies concomitant with food crop varieties, adoption of new, improved varieties lags well behind that in Asia, Latin America and the Middle East (Sanchez, 2002; Ngongi, 2008).

As mentioned the use of N fertiliser in recommended quantities still eludes farmers of developing countries. The loss of important nutrients, critical to plant production has been estimated to equate to US\$4 billion dollars in fertiliser (Sanchez *et al.*, 1997). However, the use of fertilisers is considered taboo as its costs far outweigh its benefits to the predominantly subsistence farming community of SSA. In fact, fertilisers are twice to six times pricier to the African farmer than to their counterparts elsewhere in Europe, North America and Asia (Sanchez, 2002). Nevertheless, for many smallholder farmers from developing countries the envisaged shift to low external input agriculture may be to their benefit as it may eventually be the 'primer' for them to break into world agriculture.

### **2.3 The importance of nitrogen provision by legumes**

Nitrogen (N) is a vital component of chlorophyll, amino acids, nucleic acids, proteins and enzymes and the lack thereof during critical periods of plant growth may cause less nutritious plant crops (Miller & Cramer, 2004). The

importance of N to plants is highlighted by the various novel adaptations of different plant species to obtain this scarce nutrient. An example of this in the tropics, where soils are prone to N deficiency is, some plants have evolved eloquent ways to attain N through trapping insects, which they digest to release invaluable N (Adamec, 1997). Similarly, plants that grow in areas typified by almost year-round snow cover like in the arctic make use of organic-N in the form of amino acids instead of inorganic-N such as ammonia ( $\text{NH}_4^+$ ) or nitrate ( $\text{NO}_3^-$ ) (Kielland, 1994, Miller & Cramer, 2004). Well in excess of 50% of the N obtained by alpine plants and native plants growing in the arctic tundra may be in the form of organic-N (Kielland, 1994). Other forms of N, which can temporarily occur in the soil at high concentrations, are urea via urine excretion from animals in pastures or, as previously noted, fertiliser N applications (Andrews *et al.*, 2004). Nevertheless, almost all forms are usually rapidly converted to  $\text{NH}_4^+$  and  $\text{NO}_3^-$  by soil microorganisms.



Another exquisite adaptation to acquire N, which is pivotal to future agricultural practices, is the association of legume plants with endosymbiotic bacteria collectively referred to as rhizobia. Rhizobia convert  $\text{N}_2$  to a usable form, normally  $\text{NH}_4^+$ , readily available to their legume hosts. This process is confined to a selective few in the plant kingdom and allows the plant hosts to tap into an apparently inexhaustible reservoir of N. Symbiotic nitrogen fixation (SNF) is estimated to contribute approximately 65% of the total annual fixation (Herridge & Rose, 2000), with more N added to agricultural ecosystems globally than the total amount of fertiliser N (Rengel, 2002). Depending on the plant host, the amount of N fixed by agriculturally



important legumes may vary from very low to amounts as high as 60 Mt annually (Graham & Vance, 2003). Furthermore, unlike other forms of N fertilizers ( $\text{NH}_4^+/\text{NO}_3^-$ ), symbiotically fixed N is less prone to volatilization, denitrification and leaching (Graham & Vance, 2000).

This capability of engaging in symbiosis may stand legume hosts in good stead, even under global warming conditions, which are leading in particular to an increase in  $\text{CO}_2$ . Elevated  $\text{CO}_2$  has been shown to have no apparent deleterious effects on N constituents of symbiotic soybean. This legume host was able to acclimate to increased N demand at elevated  $[\text{CO}_2]$  to match increase in C gain (Rogers *et al.*, 2006). In contrast, Högy *et al.* (2009) showed that growth under elevated  $\text{CO}_2$  altered a number of grain traits that determine nutritional value and market quality of wheat, despite yield improvements under these conditions. This deterioration in grain quality might also have some negative effects on industrial processing. Both aforementioned studies (Rogers *et al.*, 2006; Högy *et al.*, 2009) were conducted over at least two growing seasons. It has also been demonstrated that cassava (*Manihot esculenta*), after exposure to simulated  $\text{CO}_2$  conditions envisioned under global warming conditions, accrued more toxins in their edible leaves with a concomitant decrease in yield (Gleadow *et al.*, 2009). This has dire implications to people from poorer regions that consume the tubers, but particularly the leaves of this crop as a protein supplement.

## **2.4 Alternative uses for legumes**

Nodulated legumes can serve a multitude of purposes in sustainable agriculture. Food legumes, most commonly beans and peas, are important components of farming systems and these have received considerably more attention than any of the other lesser known leguminous plants. This is because such food legumes are directly correlated to human well-being. However, legumes accruing high N concentrations through SNF also have an importance in other industries, including agroforestry, the medical profession and the meat and dairy industries (Morris, 1997; Graham & Vance, 2003). Legumes can provide speciality products, which can be used as natural pharmaceutical remedies for ailments (Graham & Vance, 2003). Furthermore, their use as a source of fuelwood, fiber, gums, dyes and oils as well as windbreaks and for stabilizing of sand dunes and eroding hillsides is well documented. Thus, some if not all legumes may have multiple purposes, which may extend beyond their use as a source of N in agricultural soils. All these encompassing traits of legumes make their incorporation into even well established farming systems, desirable (Vance, 2001).

## **2.5 Legumes and rhizobia**

### **2.5.1 Rhizobial infection**

There are some indications that in the symbiotic interaction with legumes, rhizobia are initially recognized as intruders (Dakora *et al.*, 1993; Stougaard, 2000). Not to be deterred, rhizobia eventually overcome plant defence responses and colonize the roots. Symbiosis development in root nodules of legumes is one of the most intensely studied symbiotic relationships between



microorganisms and higher plants. The idea is to 'unmask' much of the mystery surrounding potential benefits of N<sub>2</sub> fixation so as to transfer these to other economically valued cereal crops (Webster *et al.*, 1997; Cocking *et al.*, 1997). This has, so far, eluded the best proponents of bio-engineering, but recent discoveries surrounding the intricacies of the legume-rhizobia partnership have given fresh insight to allow researchers to pursue this goal.

Several reviews have, in recent times highlighted, the methodical precision of the infection process of the legume host by rhizobia (Gage & Margolin 2000, Rengel, 2002). The interaction between rhizobia and the legume root system begins with an exchange of chemical signals in the soil, which leads to colonization of the root hairs and initiation of root cortex cell division. The plant initiates its association with rhizobia through secreting phenolic compounds, most notably flavonoids, from its roots into the rhizosphere (Cage *et al.*, 2000, Rengel, 2002). These phenolic signals also incur some degree of host specificity to the rhizobia. In turn, competent rhizobia 'cross talk' by secreting nodulation (*nod*) factors. What follows is a complex signalling pathway, which is characterised by calcium spiking in susceptible root hairs (Ehrhardt *et al.*, 1996). Rhizobia are entrapped in the root hairs, which upon receiving the right signals, deform and curl around the rhizobia. Once inside the cell, rhizobia proliferate in infective threads.

This association is both selective and very specific. Individual species of rhizobia have a distinct host range allowing nodulation of only certain legumes (Stougaard, 2000). Formation of a successful symbiotic association

therefore requires a coordinated expression of both bacterial and plant genes in the appropriate ecological niche (Hungria & Stacey, 1997). At the end of these processes, the bacteroids are harboured in a symbiosome, surrounded by a plant-derived membrane, called the peribacteroid membrane (PBM). This serves as a physical and functional barrier over which nutrient exchange will take place over the duration of the symbiosis (Szafran & Haaker, 1995; Udvardi & Day, 1997).

### **2.5.2 Nodule structure and function**

Leguminous plants are conveniently divided into two distinct groups according to the N source translocated from the root system to the shoots of a particular legume host (Schubert, 1986). This is closely related to the shape of the nodules induced on the root surfaces of the legume host. In tropical regions, the predominant forms of N found in the xylem sap of legume hosts are ureides (allantoin & allantoic acid), which are produced in spherically-shaped determinate nodules with a closed meristem that at nodule maturity is unable to divide any further. Nodules from ureide-exporting legumes are spherically shaped and its infected cells lack vacuoles (Schubert, 1986). Furthermore, determinate nodules are known to harbour several bacteroids, which come about by fusion of separate symbiosomes and/or bacteroids dividing continually within an existing symbiosome (Prell & Poole, 2006).

In contrast, legumes from more temperate environments transport amide amino acids (glutamine & asparagines) and their nodules are typically indeterminate. Nodules are characterised by an open meristem, which allows



for continual divisions right through the plants life cycle. This gives rise to a cylindrically shaped nodule in which the infected cells are vacuolated (Schubert, 1986). Nodules of this type only contain one bacteroid per symbiosome (Prell & Poole, 2006).

Although, various nodules differ in some structural details, the general organization of tissue regions is similar, with the infection zone normally confined to the central region of the nodule. The two types of nodules present an intriguing difference in metabolism. This forms the basis of intense research to discern differences in nodular metabolism, which cannot be easily extrapolated between the two systems and even less so between different species (Prell & Poole, 2006). There is no consensus over which of these is actually the more efficient way of transporting N, although some consider that exporting N in the form of ureides is more efficient, since their C:N ratio is 1:1 as opposed to 2:1 for amides (Smith & Atkins, 2002).

## **1.6 P metabolism and root nodule symbiosis**

### **1.6.1 Importance of $P_i$ in plant metabolism**

Although it appears that legumes are self-sufficient at acquiring N, for the symbiosis to be effective, other minerals, in particular phosphate ( $P_i$ ), are also required. Thus, the inclusion of legumes in cropping systems does not always ensure the attainment of optimal levels of SNF (Serraj & Adu-Gyamfi, 2004). It has been consistently demonstrated that low P, in particular, impedes upon SNF, even more so than other environmental stresses. The reasons for this remain obscure, as it is often difficult to isolate the effects of low P on plant

growth and/or rhizobial function. Nodulated legumes are known to require more P, than those plants that depend on mineral N fertilizer. This may be related to the energy requirements of the N<sub>2</sub> fixing process under severely compromised aerobic glycolysis.

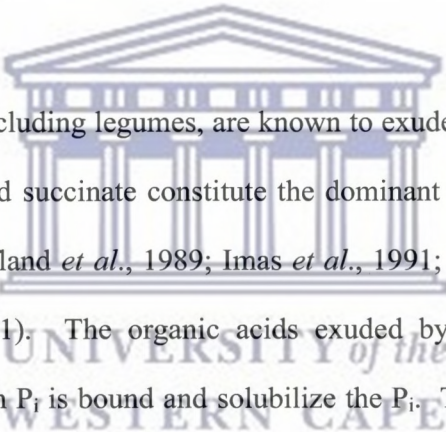
Generally in plant metabolism (as in other organisms), P has an important intermediary role acting as the energy carrier. Adenosine triphosphate (ATP) is the most important P<sub>i</sub> compound in this regard. As such, P<sub>i</sub> is intimately involved with metabolic processes. The importance of P<sub>i</sub> in plant metabolism can be attributed to a variety of factors including: (i) the unique physical characteristics of the P-P bond and its role in energy transduction, (ii) the pivotal role P<sub>i</sub> plays in fine control of metabolism as an allosteric effector of enzymatic activity (Iglesias *et al.*, 1993; Theodorou & Plaxton, 1993) or by the reversal phosphorylation of key regulatory enzymes (Plaxton, 1996), (iii) its function as an important constituent of macromolecules, e.g. phospholipids and nucleic acids and (iv) its vital role in regulating the exchange of triose phosphate between the plastid and cytosol via the P<sub>i</sub> translocator (Preiss, 1984; Walker & Sivak, 1986).

### **1.6.2 Adaptive strategies under P<sub>i</sub> deprivation**

In soil, the concentration of available P<sub>i</sub> for plants is usually very low as most of the P<sub>i</sub> is bound to iron (Fe<sup>3+</sup>), aluminium (Al<sup>3+</sup>) and calcium (Ca<sup>2+</sup>), to form sparingly soluble compounds. Consequently, plants have developed various ways to overcome the shortage of P<sub>i</sub> in their immediate environment.



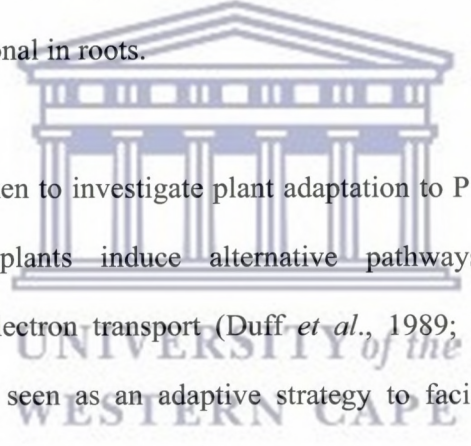
A typical response to low P content of soil is increased relative biomass allocation to roots, which ultimately results in an increase in root:shoot ratio (Paul & Stitt, 1993). In turn, this enhances the P acquisition from the growth medium. However, this may also result in retarded growth rates because of the diversion of C to the production of heterotrophic rather than photosynthetic tissues. Nielsen *et al.*, (2001) remarked that the allocation of carbohydrates to various plant parts and functions is a governing parameter of plant survival and success. Thus, the success of plants under stress conditions may be determined by their ability to control carbohydrate utilization for metabolic energy.



Several plants, including legumes, are known to exude organic acids, of which citrate, malate and succinate constitute the dominant forms, in response to  $P_i$  deprivation (Hoffland *et al.*, 1989; Imas *et al.*, 1991; Johnson *et al.*, 1996a,b; Tang *et al.*, 2001). The organic acids exuded by the roots displace the elements to which  $P_i$  is bound and solubilize the  $P_i$ . The  $P_i$  released in such a way may be taken up by roots either on its own or as a chelated complex to the organic acids exuded. The increased rate of organic acid exudation was ascribed to an increased synthesis of the organic acids mentioned. The non-photosynthetic carbon fixation route, via phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase (PEPc), has been implicated as the pathway through which the increased synthesis of these particular organic acids occurs. The activity of non-photosynthetic PEPc in the roots was enhanced by  $P_i$  starvation (Pilbeam *et al.*, 1993; Johnson *et al.*, 1994). Johnson *et al.*, (1996a) in a subsequent study revealed that this increase in PEPc activity coincided with the increase in

PEPc transcripts and the amount PEPc proteins. Hence, it was concluded that the expression of PEPc in response to  $P_i$  deprivation was, at least in part, under transcriptional control (Johnson *et al.*, 1996b).

Another strategy to acquire  $P_i$  and an increase in the  $P_i$  uptake rate in response to  $P_i$  starvation has been observed in roots and cultured cells (Drew *et al.*, 1984; Aono *et al.*, 2001). Furihata *et al.*, (1992) proposed a dual mechanism model, composed of two kinetically different uptake systems; one a high-affinity transport system and the other a low-affinity transport system. As most soils are deficient in  $P_i$ , the high-affinity transport system is thought to be primarily functional in roots.



Studies undertaken to investigate plant adaptation to P starvation have further revealed that plants induce alternative pathways of glycolysis and mitochondrial electron transport (Duff *et al.*, 1989; Theodorou & Plaxton, 1993). This is seen as an adaptive strategy to facilitate respiration by  $P_i$  deficient plant cells. Phosphate deficiency causes a decline in cytosolic  $P_i$  and adenylates and under these conditions the increased engagement of these bypasses negate the necessity for adenylates and  $P_i$  which are utilized under normal, non-stressed conditions (Duff *et al.*, 1989; Theodorou & Plaxton, 1993).

### **2.6.3 Nodule metabolism and $P_i$**

It is becoming evident that in addition to functioning at low oxygen ( $O_2$ ) tension (typically 5-20 nM, Hunt & Layzell, 1993; Kuzma *et al.*, 1993)



rhizobia often live and function where their host is P limited (Sa & Israel, 1991; Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998; Tang *et al.*, 2001; Colebatch *et al.*, 2004). Evidence from expressed sequence tags (ESTs) probing has recently strengthened claims from physiological studies (Sa & Israel, 1991; Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998) that bacteroids possess the genes related to P remobilization and recycling (Colebatch *et al.*, 2004). Nodules also possess plant originated galactolipids cell membranes (substitutes for phospholipids), a feature until recently only thought to occur in higher plant cells. This appears to be a strategy to secure P<sub>i</sub> for other essential cellular processes (Gaude *et al.*, 2004). Phosphate has specific roles in nodule initiation, growth and functioning. Several key parameters related to the capabilities of legumes to fix N<sub>2</sub> effectively, which may be deemed to give them a competitive advantage over other crops, are adversely affected by P deficiency (Jakobsen, 1985; Israel, 1993, Olivera *et al.*, 2004). These parameters include nitrogenase activity, nodule number, nodule mass and plant N accumulation of N<sub>2</sub> fixing species.

UNIVERSITY of the  
WESTERN CAPE

Although P deficiency and its role in the N<sub>2</sub> fixation process have received considerable attention (Israel 1987; Sa & Israel, 1991; Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998; Tang *et al.*, 2001; Ribet & Drevon, 1995; Drevon & Hartwig, 1997; Jebara *et al.*, 2005; Schulze & Drevon, 2005), the relationship between low phosphate (LP) supply and N<sub>2</sub> fixation is not clear. Low and limiting P supply eventually reduces plant growth and thus N demand and subsequent N<sub>2</sub> fixation. Nitrogen fixation rate in P deficient plants may exert effects on the growth of the host plant, on the growth and functioning of the nodule or on the

growth of both the plant and nodule (Jakobsen, 1985; Israel, 1993; Sa and Israel, 1991).

Phosphate-deficient plants form smaller nodules compared with control plants supplied with sufficient P (Ribet & Drevon, 1995). This translates into an increased nodule surface area to nodule volume for nodules under P deprivation (Ribet & Drevon, 1995). Unlike other abiotic stresses studied thus far, P deficiency increases the permeability to O<sub>2</sub>, with a concomitant increase in respiration. The permeability of nodules is due to ultrastructural changes manifested in the cortex of infected cells (Ribet & Drevon, 1995). Dinitrogen fixation remains unchanged even with this apparent disturbance in O<sub>2</sub> flux into nodules (Ribet & Drevon, 1995).

The fact that legumes are particularly sensitive to P<sub>i</sub> deficiency may be related to its role in energy turnover within root nodules. The nitrogenase enzyme complex catalyzes the six-electron reduction of N<sub>2</sub> to NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>, including the reduction of 2H<sup>+</sup> to H<sub>2</sub> that uses 16-18 molecules of ATP (Dixon & Kahn, 2004). Thus, because N<sub>2</sub> fixation requires a huge amount of energy and because P has a key role in energy metabolism in cells, P deficiency may adversely affect the energy status of legume nodules and ultimately nodule function (Sa & Israel, 1991). However, bacteroids are able to maintain their adenylate energy charge (AEC) even when subjected to prolonged P deficiency, whereas the AEC in the plant fraction of the nodule was reduced (Sa & Israel, 1991).



Alternatively, sensitivity of  $N_2$  to  $P_i$  deficiency may be because of altered N metabolism in nodules. On a quantitative basis, N and P are the two mineral elements required most by plants and a deficiency in either one of these elements impacts negatively on various processes of plant metabolism. Furthermore, since the metabolism of these elements is integrally linked, a deficiency in one adversely affects the processing of the other. This might be even more apparent in leguminous plants where it has been reported that an improvement in P status of legumes solely dependent on symbiotic  $N_2$  fixation, increased tissue N concentration as well as overall host plant growth (Israel, 1987). Greater stimulation of symbiotic  $N_2$  fixation with added P is associated with an enhancement in the specific nitrogenase activity of the nodules (Jakobsen, 1985; Israel, 1987). Soils devoid of extractable P, which are encountered globally, may negate the benefits associated with high  $N_2$  fixation rates of leguminous hosts. This is of particular relevance to subsistence farmers who remove P during harvesting which strains soil P reserves (Vance, 2001).

The initial assimilation step of  $N_2$  to  $NH_4^+$  appears to be more sensitive to P deficiency than the subsequent incorporation of soluble reduced N into protein and nucleic acids (Israel & Rufty, 1988; Sa & Israel, 1995). This conclusion was derived from results that showed that initial P deficiency conditions resulted in low levels of soluble reduced N (Israel & Rufty, 1988). This effect gradually disappeared when increasing the P nutrition of the nodule (Israel & Rufty, 1988). Similarly, the adverse effect that P deficiency had on  $N_2$  fixation might have been as a result of poor nodule initiation, growth and

specific nitrogenase activity (Israel, 1987; 1993). In addition, it must be realized that P deficiency may also directly or indirectly influence other steps in the N assimilatory pathway of N<sub>2</sub> fixing plants. Furthermore the activities of nitrogenase and nitrate reductase, both enzymes of nitrogen assimilation, have been shown to increase with P nutrition (Carling *et al.*, 1978).

Nodules are composed of heterogeneous, but distinct, regions and cell types; an outer uninfected cortex (with vascular tissue) and a central region with infected and uninfected cells. Thus, an altered distribution pattern among this diverse population of cells for metabolites such as P is envisaged. Indeed, <sup>31</sup>P-nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) studies have demonstrated the variable distribution of P in nodules (Rolin *et al.*, 1989). In addition, this distribution pattern might differ between the different N-exporting legumes, since it is known that bacteroids from ureide-exporters such as soybean are non vacuolated as oppose to vacuolated cells of amide-exporting legumes (e.g. lupins) (Schubert, 1986). Thus, cells with less pronounced vacuolar spaces, as is the case for ureide exporters, would considerably limit the storage capacity for nutrients, including P<sub>i</sub>.

Furthermore, slow growing strains of rhizobia appear more tolerant to low P levels than do fast growing strains, despite having similar capacities for P uptake. Both may increase their uptake efficiency several times faster than cells grown with adequate P (Beck & Munns, 1984). In general, both free-living and symbiotic rhizobial cultures respond to P stress by increasing their P transport capacity and inducing alkaline- and acid phosphatases (Al-Niemi



*et al.*, 1997; 1998). Alternatively, cultured rhizobia demonstrated the capacity to store P and utilize it accordingly under P starved conditions (Cassman *et al.*, 1981).

## **2.7 Trade-offs in a mutualistic symbiosis**

### **2.7.1 C and N exchange during symbiosis**

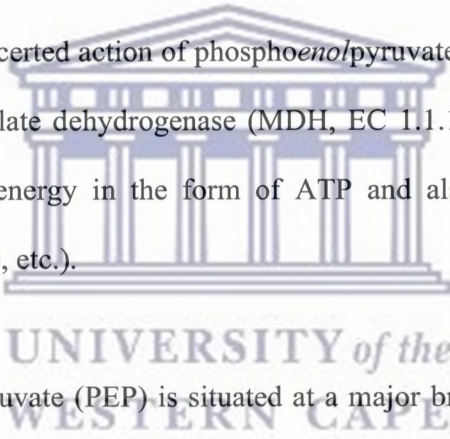
The major exchange of nutrients between the symbiotic partners in the legume-*Rhizobium* association is reduced carbon (C) from the plant, for fixed N from the bacteroid (Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990; Udvardi & Day, 1997). A much more complex nature of this exchange has been hypothesised, though, which involves amino acid cycling (*see later discussion; Section 1.7.2*) (Lodwig *et al.*, 2003; Prell & Poole, 2006; White *et al.*, 2007).

Nitrogen fixation requires a large input of energy and reducing equivalents. Carbon supplied to the bacteroids is ultimately derived from photosynthate, transported to nodules as sucrose (Suc). However, once in the nodule, Suc can be cleaved by either sucrose synthase (SuSy, EC 2.4.1.13) or alkaline invertase (AI, EC 3.2.1.26). Mutants in which SuSy activity has been removed, although forming viable bacteroids seemingly capable of N<sub>2</sub> fixation, were unable to fix N<sub>2</sub> (Craig *et al.*, 1999; Gordon *et al.*, 1999). This appears to be the result of impaired C and energy metabolism and demonstrates the need for SuSy in assuring N<sub>2</sub> fixing capacity for the host.

There is considerable evidence that Suc breakdown occurs in the uninfected cell region of the nodule where O<sub>2</sub> levels may still be sufficiently high to drive

the metabolism of Suc breakdown. Once in the infected cells, the microaerobic conditions that prevail might prevent mitochondrial respiration from supplying Suc as a C source to the bacteroids at a sufficient rate to support any substantial N<sub>2</sub> fixation activity (Day & Copeland, 1991). In addition, SuSy and AI activities are markedly up-regulated in uninfected cells compared with the surrounding roots (White *et al.*, 2007).

One possible fate of the hexoses (e.g. UDP-glucose and fructose) derived from Suc cleavage is that they could be metabolised through the glycolytic pathway to form phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP), which in turn is converted to malate (Mal) via the concerted action of phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase (PEPc, EC 4.1.1.31) and malate dehydrogenase (MDH, EC 1.1.1.37). The oxidation of sugars liberates energy in the form of ATP and also reducing equivalents (NAD[P]H, NAD, etc.).



Phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) is situated at a major branch-point for N and C metabolism of higher plants, particularly in leguminous plants (Vance *et al.*, 1985). At this PEP branch-point, there is constant competition for C skeletons between the organic acid pool (for TCA cycle intermediates and energy) and the amino acid pool (for N assimilation). Both these pathways form essential parts of a leguminous plant's high nutritional status, which has made it such an important source of dietary protein globally. Simply stated, an impeded supply of C skeletons to assimilated N could well be expected to be detrimental to the incorporation of N rich compounds in the seeds, which forms the basis of the protein richness in legumes. Thus, there are grounds to



consider C and N metabolism simultaneously, since it appears the metabolism of the two metabolites is so integrally linked, particularly in legume root nodules.

While previous research has proposed that bacteroids in symbiosis trade  $\text{NH}_4^+$  in exchange for the C offered by the plant partner, one study, in particular, casts some doubt on the type of N metabolite released to the host (Waters *et al.*, 1998). These authors reported alanine (Ala) instead of  $\text{NH}_4^+$  as the sole secretion product of bacteroids in soybean (Waters *et al.*, 1998). However, in a subsequent study the amount of Ala secreted depended on the relative amount of  $\text{NH}_4^+$  build up in the medium (Allaway *et al.*, 2000). Nevertheless, results from the first study (Waters *et al.*, 1998) in which this was demonstrated have not been repeated since (Li *et al.*, 2001), whereas subsequent mutational studies refuted the importance of Ala dehydrogenase in other symbioses where  $\text{N}_2$  fixation proceeded unperturbed (Allaway *et al.*, 2000; Kumar *et al.*, 2005). Alanine dehydrogenase is the enzyme responsible for converting pyruvate to Ala in bacteroids and the principal route for Ala synthesis. Thus, due to the inconsistency in results demonstrated,  $\text{NH}_4^+$  is still considered the main excretory product of the root-nodule symbiosis.

In the root nodule, the generated  $\text{NH}_4^+$  is processed via the coupled activity of glutamine synthetase and glutamate synthase (GS/GOGAT) after being excreted into the plant cytosol. The first step in this assimilatory pathway is the catalysis by glutamine synthetase (GS), which requires ATP and forms glutamine (Gln). In excess of 90% of the total GS activity is in the plant

tissue, where it has been estimated to account for approximately 2% of the total soluble protein (Cullimore & Bennett, 1998). Moreover, the activity of this enzyme is increased compared with that in uninoculated roots (Trepp *et al.*, 1999). The Gln that was formed by the former reaction is subsequently converted to glutamate (Glu) by glutamate synthase (NADH-GOGAT) (Cullimore & Bennett, 1998).

It would appear, that the legume host might be able to alter the assimilatory route of N under P stress conditions (Olivera *et al.*, 2004). Common bean plants, which are deemed ureide-exporting legumes, subjected to P stress, showed a negative correlation between xanthine dehydrogenase (XDH) and uricase, the enzymes involved in glutamate (Glu) assimilation into ureides. On the other hand a strong positive correlation was demonstrated for aspartate amino transferase (AAT), an enzyme normally associated with Glu incorporation into aspartate (Asp) in amide-exporting legumes (Olivera *et al.*, 2004).

### **2.7.2 The role of amino acid cycling in attaining symbiotic efficiency**

A new and groundbreaking theory has probed the complex interchange of C and N between the legume host and the endosymbiotic rhizobia it harbours. This new hypothesis proposes that in addition to releasing C to the rhizobia, the host plant also trades an N source in the form of amino acid(s) (Lodwig *et al.*, 2003).



The exchange of amino acids in symbiosis is proposed to function by shutting down bacteroid ammonium ( $\text{NH}_4^+$ ) assimilation and allowing the flow of fixed N to the host (Lodwig *et al.*, 2003). As far as this is concerned, there is substantial evidence for amino acid metabolism in nodules. Isolated *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* bacteroids incubated anaerobically with  $^{14}\text{C}$  malate or succinate accumulated 20-40 % of the labeled C in Glu (Salminen & Streeter, 1987). Furthermore, labeling studies with  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  in which isolated bacteroids of detached nodules for both pea and soybean were used also showed similar distribution patterns of the amino acid fraction in Glu (Salminen & Streeter, 1992). The Glu may have been derived from Ala, which was rapidly turned over. In addition, long-term exposure to  $^{14}\text{C}$  malate of isolated peribacteroid units of pea accumulated 60% of the amino acid fraction in Ala and 40% in aspartate (Asp) (Rosendahl *et al.*, 1992).

In contrast to  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelling studies, whole plant labelling studies with  $^{15}\text{N}$  revealed no such high levels of Glu (or Ala) in bacteroids of pea plants, but rather showed asparagine (Asn) to be the dominant amino acid compound (*see* Lodwig & Poole, 2003). Nevertheless, although Glu appears to support  $\text{N}_2$  fixation in isolated soybean bacteroids (Bergersen & Turner, 1988; Kouchi *et al.*, 1991) it seems that the isolated PBM of soybean, bean and pea is impermeable to Glu (Price *et al.*, 1987; Udvardi *et al.*, 1988; Herrada *et al.*, 1989; Hernández *et al.*, 1996). In addition, Asp is not a dominant amino acid in bacteroids and has not consistently been demonstrated as an excretory product at high levels by peribacteroid units of pea (Rosendahl *et al.*, 1992). Instead Ala is the principal amino acid detected in soybean bacteroids (Waters

*et al.*, 1998; Allaway *et al.*, 2000). Ludwig and Poole (2003) proposed, on the grounds of increased activity of aspartate aminotransferase (AAT, E.C. 1.1.23) in the peribacteroid space (PBS) (Rosendahl *et al.*, 2001), that the transamination of Asp might well occur in the PBS. Aspartate aminotransferase catalyses the reversible conversion of Asp and 2-oxoglutarate to glutamate and OAA (Lodwig & Poole, 2003).

Although there is substantial labelling evidence showing intracellular amino acid synthesis and metabolism by bacteroids, the precise role of amino acids in the N<sub>2</sub> fixation process remains elusive (Walshaw & Poole, 1996; Hosie *et al.*, 2001). The question arises, then, if bacteroids were able to accept amino acid(s) from the plant host, how would such an exchange contribute to the efficiency of the symbiotic process? Indeed, the exchange of amino acids, such as Asp, Glu, Ala, and potentially others, between rhizobia and their host plants appears to be critical for successful symbiosis (Lodwig *et al.*, 2003).

Propositions of a malate-aspartate shuttle between the plant- and bacteroid fractions through which reducing equivalents are shunted to the nitrogenase system for N<sub>2</sub> fixation by bacteroids have surfaced in earlier studies (Kahn *et al.*, 1985; Appels & Haaker, 1991). It was suggested that malate and glutamate would be imported into the bacteroid in exchange for 2-oxoglutarate and Asp, respectively (Kahn *et al.*, 1985). Recently, this has been probed by assessing bacterial mutants which had two broad range amino acid ABC-type transporters (*aap* and *bra*) have been knocked out (Lodwig *et al.*, 2003). These amino-acid transporters have also shown low-affinity exporting activity



(Walshaw & Poole, 1996; Hosie *et al.*, 2001). These double mutants displayed a marked reduction in shoot dry weight (DW) and shoot N and typically responded to the N deficit by increasing nodule numbers and mass (Lodwig *et al.*, 2003). Interestingly, the double mutants were able to grow on minimal medium, suggesting that they exuded amino acids into the medium for subsequent uptake. Also, the nodules produced by such mutants retained their capacity to fix N<sub>2</sub> at similar rates or even higher rates than the wild-type parents (Lodwig *et al.*, 2003).

Based on the evidence available and the stoichiometric relationship (or lack thereof) of a conventional malate-aspartate shuttle, it appears more likely that a modified malate-alanine shuttle is active in root nodules (Lodwig & Poole, 2003). However, some of this may be related to the isolation technique used, which is important since improper energisation of the bacteroid membrane once it has been isolated affects the transport of various nutrients (Lodwig & Poole, 2003). Energy is a prerequisite for transport of dicarboxylic acids in *Rhizobium leguminosarum*, *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*, *R. meliloti* (Glenn *et al.*, 1980; Reibach & Streeter, 1984; McRae *et al.*, 1989). Although this proposed model still has a few challenges in terms of identifying which amino acids are traded between the partners, it provides evidence for the co-dependence of the two symbiotic partners and evolutionary pressure for symbiosis to prevail (Lodwig *et al.*, 2003). Nevertheless, this is an exciting proposal and has added another dimension to how complex the liaison between the legumes and their rhizobial partners actually is and the possible consequences this may have for exploiting the symbiosis are far-reaching.

### 2.7.3 Respiratory substrates for bacteroids in symbiosis

The supply of photosynthate-derived C and energy-bearing substrates to bacteroids residing in the root nodules of legumes is the subject of extensive investigation because the supply of 'essential' nutrients to bacteroids (N<sub>2</sub> fixation hub) in relation to nutrient partitioning in nodule tissue and nutrient transport to the symbiosome may affect the effectiveness of N<sub>2</sub> fixation (McRae *et al.*, 1989). Contrary to common belief, symbiotic rhizobia may have a nutritional complexity unsurpassed by other free-living bacteria, judged solely on the higher incidence of ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters identified by genomic studies (Gaude *et al.*, 2004). This dispels the notion that rhizobia in symbiosis may have limited access to a variety of nutrients, either from the soil or in the plant rhizosphere (Prell & Poole, 2006).

As strictly respiratory organisms, differentiated bacteria in the symbiosome (bacteroids) must get their energy from the respiratory chain by oxidizing energy rich substrates and reducing O<sub>2</sub>. The first casualty, however, of the symbiosis is the luxury O<sub>2</sub>, which in the nodular environment has now become almost limiting, at least for baseline glycolysis. Once in symbiosis, bacteroids are dependent on the plant host for all compounds crucial for an efficient metabolism. The low O<sub>2</sub> tension in the root nodule environment has implications for the catabolism of C, not likely to be encountered under aerobic conditions. Legume nodules maintain a low O<sub>2</sub> concentration of between 3 and 22 nM (Hunt & Layzell, 1993, Minchin, 1997). This is achieved by expressing high affinity terminal oxidases and also by



maintaining high levels of O<sub>2</sub> binding leghemoglobin protein. This sets the tone for further symbiosis, because if the O<sub>2</sub> concentration is not kept at a sufficiently low level, N<sub>2</sub> fixation, which is realised through an oxygen-labile nitrogenase, would fail to occur.

Compromised C metabolism under microaerobic conditions has given further credence to the proposal that instead of C being metabolised to pyruvate, which would happen under fully aerobic conditions, C is converted to malate via the PEPc reaction. Symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> fixing rhizobia favour malate (and other related dicarboxylic acids) as C source. Neither sugars nor amino acids elicit significant acetylene reducing activity over a wide range of O<sub>2</sub> concentrations (Miller *et al.*, 1988). Moreover, dicarboxylic acids are transported via the C<sub>4</sub> dicarboxylate transport system (Dct), at significant rates, consistent with their role as principal C source for bacteroids, whereas there are seemingly no carriers on the peribacteroid membrane (PBM) for sugars and amino acids (McRae *et al.*, 1989; Udvardi *et al.*, 1990). The Dct system, consists of three genes: *dctA* encoding a transport protein and two sensory regulators, *dctB* and *dctD*, which activate the transcription of *dctA* in response to C<sub>4</sub> dicarboxylic acids (Reid & Poole, 1998; Yurgel & Kahn, 2004). This transport system has been shown to be indispensable for N<sub>2</sub> fixation, with mutants defective in it registering a Fix<sup>-</sup> phenotype (Yurgel & Kahn, 2005).

Dicarboxylic acids accumulate to millimolar (mM) concentrations in legume root nodules (McRae *et al.*, 1989; Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990). Labeling data on whole nodule tissue further support dicarboxylates (e.g. malate, succinate and

fumarate) as the C source for bacteroids due to them being rapidly labeled in plant cytosol when nodules are exposed to  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  and rapidly incorporated into bacteroids as malate (Kouchi & Yoneyama, 1986; Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990). Malate may make up as much as 50% of the total organic acid pool (Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990).

*In vitro* studies in a flow chamber have shown a complex relationship between dicarboxylic acid concentration,  $\text{O}_2$  concentration and  $\text{N}_2$  fixation in soybean bacteroids (Li *et al.*, 2001). The exchange of malate between the legume host and inhabitant rhizobia is central to the efficiency of symbiotic relationship. Among other things, malate provides a significant portion of C skeletons for fixed N assimilation. It has also been suggested that malate helps in the regulation of the oxygen diffusion barrier via an osmoelectrical mechanism (Gálvez *et al.*, 2000). Further evidence of the pivotal role that malate plays in root nodules is the fact that ineffective nodules, whether induced by changes in either bacterial or plant genotype, have strikingly reduced levels of malate as compared with effective nodules (Schulze, 2004). Moreover, mutations in rhizobia that block organic acid use, result in ineffective nodules, while those that block amino acid- and carbohydrate use generally have no effect on  $\text{N}_2$  fixation (Ronson *et al.*, 1981; Driscoll & Finan, 1993).

De Vries *et al.*, (1980) proposed at least three roles for the malate pathway in nodule metabolism. According to De Vries *et al.*, (1980), a part of the malate and possibly of other OAs could be used as a carbon and energy source for the  $\text{N}_2$  fixing bacteroids. Another part of the malate could enter the Krebs cycle of



mitochondria and produce energy, in the form of ATP, reducing power and C skeletons used during the functioning of nitrogenase and biosynthesis of amino acids from ammonium. Lastly, and no less important, malate could also be involved in the adjustment of charge balance in vacuoles and in xylem fluid. Malate has been shown to balance the majority of the excess inorganic cation charge of xylem sap (approximately 75%), with most of the remaining charge being balanced by allantoate (in tropical legumes) and aspartate (Israel & Jackson, 1982).

## **2.8 Enzymes of malate metabolism**

### **2.8.1 Malate dehydrogenase (MDH)**

There is widespread consensus that the predominant C<sub>4</sub> dicarboxylic acid in root nodules of legumes is malate, which is synthesized by the concerted action of PEPc and malate dehydrogenase from oxaloacetate (OAA) and NADH. Under physiological conditions, such as in the plant cytosol, the equilibrium of the reaction catalyzed by MDH is completely in favour of malate and NAD<sup>+</sup>. Malate dehydrogenase activity in root nodules has consistently been shown to be higher than that in roots (Lawrie & Wheeler, 1975; Appels & Haaker, 1988). As shown by tracer experiments, metabolite concentrations and by enzyme activity determinations, OAA is rapidly reduced into malate by MDH or transaminated into aspartate by aspartate aminotransferase (AAT). The latter pathway leads to asparagine synthesis and is the source of the main amide translocated from nodules to shoots in temperate legumes. However, an increase in plant cell cytosolic malate concentration due to reduced malate uptake by the bacteroids could favour

PEP metabolism via PK over PEP metabolism via PEPc (McCloud *et al.*, 2001). Reduced malate uptake by the bacteroids could occur when nitrogenase is inhibited by treatments that perturb plant C and N metabolism, e.g. detopping, Ar/O<sub>2</sub> (80/20, v/v) treatment (Curioni *et al.*, 1999).

The enzyme MDH occurs ubiquitously as multiple forms that differ in sub-cellular localization and co-factor specificity (Miller *et al.*, 1998; Schulze *et al.*, 2002). The presence of these various forms of MDH is indicative of its diverse role in plant as well as microbial metabolism (Schulze *et al.*, 2002; Ludwig *et al.*, 2003). Five distinct cDNAs for MDH were cloned (Miller *et al.*, 1998) and this was the first report of a cDNA that encoded nodule-enhanced MDH (neMDH). This particular transcript, although distributed in other tissues, was mainly localized in the nodules. This substantiated earlier biochemical reports of a nodule specific form of MDH in pea and lupin nodules (Appels & Haaker, 1988; Ratajczak *et al.*, 1989). Biochemical characterisation of the novel neMDH in alfalfa revealed that it had approximately 7-fold greater affinity for OAA than its comparative form in the cytosol (cMDH). Similarly, neMDH enzyme turnover rates for malate oxidation and oxaloacetic acid (OAA) reduction were 4-fold and 30-fold greater, respectively, than those for cMDH (Schulze *et al.*, 2002). Specificity constants for OAA and NADH were also increased by up to 100-fold compared with specificity constants for malate and NAD. What this shows, is that the neMDH catalyses high *in vitro* rates of malate production. Thus, neMDH provides an attractive target to develop plants with modified malate



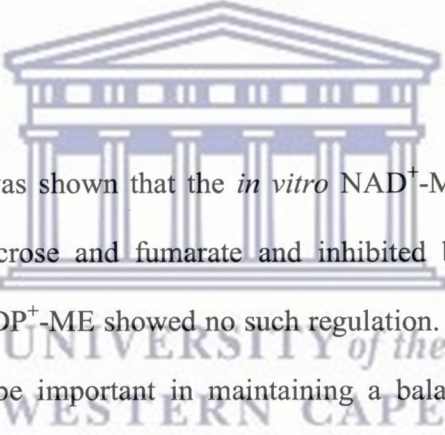
metabolism. Immunoprecipitation experiments showed that neMDH makes up about 50% of the total nodule MDH (Miller *et al.*, 1998).

Furthermore, it has previously been shown that malate can form up to 32% of the exuded C in proteoid roots under P deficiency (Johnson *et al.*, 1996a). This reflects the role MDH plays in providing organic acids for exudation from P stressed roots and is seen as an adaptive strategy by these P deficient roots to mobilize bound P from their immediate environment. Thus, malate has a pivotal role in acquisition of N through symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> and P through root exudation. In addition, increased synthesis of malate (and citrate) confers plant tolerance to aluminium toxicity (Delhaize & Ryan, 1995). In the light of all this evidence, it has been proposed that malate forms a critical component of improved plant nutrition through its effects of increased nutrient acquisition and adaptation to environmental stress (Schulze *et al.*, 2002). Two transgenic lines with increase capacity for malate synthesis via the neMDH have been developed (Tesfaye *et al.*, 2001). This increased malate synthesis was correlated with greater MDH activity and expression of the enzyme. The transgenic plants with enhanced neMDH in root tips also showed a significant increase in nodule efficiency, a parameter related to potential for improved N<sub>2</sub> fixation.

### **1.8.2 Malic enzyme (ME)**

The malate pool size is the result of both malate synthesis and utilisation. In this regard, activities of two malic enzymes (ME), NAD-ME and NADP-ME have been demonstrated in *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* (Copeland *et al.*,

1989). Malic enzymes decarboxylate malate to pyruvate (Lodwig & Poole, 2003). The two enzymes have similar activities in *B. japonicum*. Yet in *Sinorhizobium meliloti* the activity of NAD-ME is much higher than NADP-ME. This lower activity is correlated with a lower expression (approx. 20% relative to free-living cells), whilst NAD-ME activity was unaffected (Copeland *et al.*, 1989). Mutation of NAD-ME in *S. meliloti* produced bacteroids with a  $\text{Fix}^-$  phenotype, whereas a mutation in NADP-ME had no effect on symbiosis. Purified NAD-ME has a  $K_m$  of 9.4 mM for Mal and  $K_m$ s of 89  $\mu\text{M}$  and 1.56 mM for  $\text{NAD}^+$  and  $\text{NADP}^+$ , respectively. In contrast, the  $K_m$  of  $\text{NADP}^+$ -ME for malate was 2.6 mM and 33  $\mu\text{M}$  for  $\text{NADP}^+$  (Voegelé *et al.*, 1999).



Furthermore, it was shown that the *in vitro*  $\text{NAD}^+$ -ME affinity for Mal was stimulated by sucrose and fumarate and inhibited by OAA, pyruvate and acetyl-CoA.  $\text{NADP}^+$ -ME showed no such regulation. Allosteric regulation of  $\text{NAD}^+$ -ME may be important in maintaining a balanced input of Mal and subsequent acetyl-CoA into the TCA cycle of mitochondria or bacteroids. When acetyl-CoA concentration is low, sucrose and fumarate might accumulate, stimulating  $\text{NAD}^+$ -ME to produce more pyruvate and subsequent acetyl-CoA for consumption in the TCA cycle. An increase in acetyl-CoA down regulates  $\text{NAD}^+$ -ME activity to ensure Mal is available for MDH.

The activities of both bacteroid MEs play a pivotal role in regulation of metabolism through balancing the input of reducing equivalents. Redox balance of TCA is essential. For example, if the  $\text{NADH}/\text{NAD}$  ratio is either



too high or too low, the cycle is inhibited. A ratio of 0.83 for *B. japonicum* bacteroids was shown to be inhibitory for citrate synthase activity *in vitro*. (Tabrett & Copeland, 2000). This indicates that during symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> fixation enzyme activities would be markedly reduced *in planta*.

## 2.9 Carbon diversion and $\beta$ -polyhydroxy-butyrate (PHB) metabolism

As discussed in earlier sections of this review, it is clear that bacteroids have a high demand for C to meet their respiratory needs. This insatiable C need may be second only to its other strong sink capacity for P. Indeed, the demand for either C or P may be interrelated (Olivera *et al.*, 2004). Earlier, we alluded to the need for maintaining the sensitive balance between C (and energy) inputs and outputs in the light of the non-growing nature of bacteroids. Bacteroids have adapted an eloquent way of circumventing dire complications when a surplus of C is sensed. In symbiosis, rhizobia respond to an oversupply of C by accumulating much of the excess C in reserve polymers.

In nodules, the main C storage polymer is polyhydroxy-butyrate (PHB). Interestingly, the C storage polymer PHB has only been shown to occur in bacteroids of determinate nodules such as *B. japonicum*, *R. etli* and *R. leguminosarum*. This C polymer accumulates and may form as much as 70% of the bacteroid dry weight under microaerobic conditions in symbiotic cells (Lodwig & Poole, 2003). Similarly, when cultured cells were supplied with an excess of malate, N<sub>2</sub> fixation was inhibited until such time as the substrate level was lowered either through bacteroid metabolism or through washing away from the medium (Bergersen & Turner, 1990; Bergersen & Turner,

1992). In free-living cells any alteration(s) to growing conditions that reduce(s) the flow of C into biosynthetic pathways or respiration results in concomitant increases in the PHB content of such cells (Lodwig & Poole, 2003).

*In vitro* studies using isolated *B. japonicum* bacteroids showed that bacteroids are able to fix N<sub>2</sub> when no substrate is supplied, suggesting the usage of endogenous reserves. As much as 90% of the <sup>14</sup>C malate supplied to bacteroids accumulated in PHB within 5 h. When substrate is omitted PHB reserves are depleted by 9% over a similar 5 h-period and it was shown that most of the respired CO<sub>2</sub> was derived from PHB (Bergersen & Turner, 1992). Furthermore, *B. japonicum* bacteroids degrade PHB when the supply of C is impeded by stem girdling (Bergersen *et al.*, 1991). An interesting observation is that significant changes in PHB content can be detected in hours, suggesting a rapid flux of C through PHB. Moreover, it is clear from this observation that exogenous substrate is used primarily to supplement endogenous reserves such as PHB, which in turn may provide support for N<sub>2</sub> fixation.

A link between PHB synthesis and N<sub>2</sub> fixation has been demonstrated for various strains. For instance, a *R. etli* mutant devoid of *nifA* produced little or no PHB (Cermola *et al.*, 2000). Additionally, there is substantial evidence to show that under certain circumstances bacteroid PHB metabolism fuels N<sub>2</sub> fixation. Strains of *R. leguminosarum* and *R. lupini* showed an inverse correlation between PHB content and the rate of nitrogenase activity with both showing daily antagonistic fluctuation (Kretovich *et al.*, 1977). Furthermore,

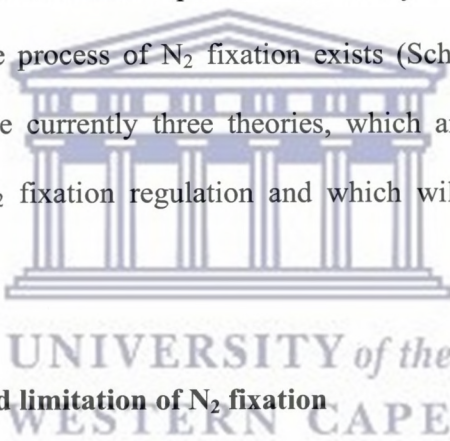


PHB content of lupin bacteroids is high (about 13-14% of dry weight) at the start when nitrogenase activity has not yet commenced. However, as development progresses and nitrogenase capacity is gained, there is a substantial decline (3-4% DW at the period of maximum N<sub>2</sub> fixation) in PHB content. Polyhydroxy butyrate content reaches its peak again once seed ripening is realised (Romanov *et al.*, 1980).

It has been suggested that bacteroid PHB metabolism may serve to divert reductant and C away from the TCA cycle under microaerobic conditions. This in turn would alleviate TCA cycle enzyme inhibition (*see section on inhibition of TCA cycle by redox poise*), whereas removal of C would secure a balanced supply to the TCA. This evidence is suggestive of the hypothesis, which claims that PHB metabolism operates separately or alternatively competes with the nitrogenase enzyme complex for reductant and energy (Lodwig & Poole, 2003). This evidence is provided by studies with a rhizobial mutant strain unable to produce PHB where it was found that this did not impact negatively on the symbiosis. In fact, there was an increase in N<sub>2</sub> fixation and the mutation prolonged the capacity for N<sub>2</sub> fixation of bean nodules (Cevallos *et al.*, 1996). In addition, plants inoculated with this mutant strain increased their dry weights and they produced more seeds with a higher N content (Cevallos *et al.*, 1996). Polyhydroxy-butyrate content and activity of PHB metabolic enzymes increase during nodule development during which there is a gradual decline of O<sub>2</sub> uptake as the bacteroids differentiate to maturity.

## 2.10 Other regulatory features of symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> reduction

Some studies indicate that regulation takes place in the photosynthetic apparatus, thereby affecting production and supply of non-structural carbohydrates (CHO) to nodules (Jakobsen, 1985; Sa & Israel, 1991). Estimates suggest that the N<sub>2</sub> reduction process requires approximately 2.9 mg C. mg<sup>-1</sup> fixed N, which amounts up to 30% of the current photosynthetic rate (Warembourg & Roumet, 1989). In contrast, other studies seem to indicate that regulation of N<sub>2</sub> fixation has direct effects on nitrogenase activity in nodules (Ribet & Drevon, 1995; Almeida *et al.*, 2000). These have recently been reviewed and emphasises the reality that that no one means of regulation for the process of N<sub>2</sub> fixation exists (Schulze, 2004). From this account, there are currently three theories, which are central to explaining differences in N<sub>2</sub> fixation regulation and which will be explained in brief below.



### 2.10.1 C-induced limitation of N<sub>2</sub> fixation

In a number of earlier studies, various manipulations, which impair photosynthesis (e.g. defoliation, decreased light intensity, etc.), invariably decreased the rate of N<sub>2</sub> fixation. Similarly, treatments that promote photosynthesis typically increase N<sub>2</sub> fixation. This has implicated C supply to nodules in regulating N<sub>2</sub> fixation activity.

Superimposed on this is the notion that nodules are also prone to low levels of other metabolites, in particular P, which constitutes a major element for energy metabolism in the N<sub>2</sub>-fixing process. There is strong evidence that



nodules retain adequate levels of P, whether the host plant is sufficiently supplied with P or not (Sa & Israel, 1991; Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998, Le Roux *et al.*, 2006). Furthermore, the effects of P nutrition, more specifically the deficiency thereof, on C diversion have received considerable attention (Freedden *et al.*, 1989; Raghothama, 1999). It is unknown at this stage how P deficiency affects C partitioning in nodules, i.e. how is C partitioned between host plant cell fraction, where effects of P deficiency are clear, and the bacteroids in the symbiosome, which seem resilient to even the harshest P deficiency in the plant host. And so, even with this wealth of information available to us, we remain in the dark on the precise nutritional conditions under which bacteroids are maintained by the plant (Lodwig & Poole, 2003). Thus, it is vitally important to define the support requirements of and practical limitations on symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> fixation.



### 1.10.2 The O<sub>2</sub> paradox

Oxygen has a prominent role in root nodule symbiosis as a signalling molecule in the early establishment of the symbiosis and as a substrate for bacteroid respiration. However, the nitrogenase complex responsible for the conversion of N<sub>2</sub> to NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> has a very low O<sub>2</sub> tolerance and may get damaged irreversibly if exposed to excess O<sub>2</sub> (Hunt & Layzell, 1995). On the other hand, O<sub>2</sub> is necessary to fuel the highly active respiratory processes, including that of bacteroids, which provides energy to the entire nitrogen fixation process, from incorporation to translocation. These occur aerobically in the plant fraction and bacteroid compartments. Thus, nodules are confronted with an O<sub>2</sub>

dilemma and nodule metabolism is negotiated within safe of O<sub>2</sub> limits to sustain efficient N<sub>2</sub> fixation (Layzell *et al.*, 1993).

Legume nodules will vary their permeability to O<sub>2</sub> diffusion in response to various treatments that alter the metabolic activity of the nodules (Minchin, 1997). To date, P deficiency is only of these treatments investigated that shows an increase in O<sub>2</sub> permeability (Schulze & Drevon, 2005). The reason for this remains obscure. The variable component of nodule O<sub>2</sub> permeability involves changes in the distribution of air spaces within the nodule inner cortex, resulting from an occlusion of intercellular spaces and/or volume of some of the cells (Serraj & Adu-Gyamfi, 2004). Although there is considerable evidence in support of the variable nodule O<sub>2</sub> permeability as a factor controlling nitrogenase activity, the site, nature and mode of action of such a mechanism is still elusive (Hunt & Layzell, 1993). Features of such a regulatory mechanism include 1) the rapid response to treatments that perturb apparent nitrogenase activity, 2) the reversal of the inhibitory effect by increase in partial O<sub>2</sub> pressure around the nodule.

### **2.10.3 N feedback regulation of N<sub>2</sub> fixation**

Product feedback regulation is a common feature of biochemical pathways. Surprisingly, this was only developed as a concept for N<sub>2</sub> fixation regulation in legumes in the last 15 years (Parsons *et al.*, 1993; Serraj *et al.*, 1999). Despite its recent inception, it is fast emerging as perhaps the most credible explanation for the decrease in N<sub>2</sub> fixation activity of a number of legume species (Hartwig, 1998; Almeida *et al.*, 2000; Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002;



Schulze, 2004; Sulieman *et al.*, 2008). It is suggested that if N<sub>2</sub> fixation proceeds unabated to the extent that N accumulates in excess of what is required for growth by the legume host, then the feedback inhibition that may arise from this would firstly assure that C expenditure for N assimilation ceases. This would relate to the cost-effectiveness, both in terms of C costs and energy efficiency, of the symbiotic process. Secondly, this N feedback regulation may avoid the build up of toxic NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>, the first stable product of the symbiosis, because plants have very limited capacity to store any excess N (Hartwig, 1998). Various independent studies have identified accumulated asparagine (ASN) in the phloem as the main signal for this feedback inhibition to commence (Almeida *et al.*, 2000; Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002; Schulze, 2004; Sulieman *et al.*, 2008).

### **2.11 Concluding Remarks**

Legumes may soon become part of the transformed agricultural landscape envisaged in response to dire changes in global climate and ill-advised agricultural management practices. Although we have benefited hugely from the Green Revolution of the 20th century, this exacerbated conditions for farming. Thus, the focus will now have to shift to the development of sustainable, environmentally friendly crop production systems. The role of leguminous plants as one of the pillars of sustainable agricultural practices is well documented.

However, legumes have shown particular sensitivity to environmental stresses of which P deficiency is probably the most extensively studied. Nevertheless, a clear picture of how P deficiency affects the process of N<sub>2</sub> fixation is slowly emerging. Furthermore, the newly proposed model by Lodwig *et al.*, (2003) for how exchange of C and N occurs within nodules reiterates the need for understanding the basic biochemistry and physiology of nodule function. These will subsequently need to be reconciled with genetic regulation incurred by the symbiosis. The knowledge gained from this study is important for the development of novel crops and provides impetus for both fundamental and applied research in the area of root nodule symbiosis.





### 1.12 References

Adamec L (1997) Mineral nutrition of carnivorous plants: a review. *The Botanical Review* 63: 273-299.

Al-Falih AMK (2002) Factors affecting efficiency of symbiotic nitrogen fixation by Rhizobium. *Pakistan Journal of Biological Sciences* 5: 1277-1293.

Allaway D, Lodwig E, Crompton LA, Wood M, Parsons TR, Wheeler T, Poole PS (2000) Identification of alanine dehydrogenase and its role in mixed secretion of ammonium and alanine by pea bacteroids. *Molecular Microbiology* 36: 508-515.

Almeida JPF, Hartwig UA, Frehner M, Nösberger J, Lüscher A (2000) Evidence that P deficiency induces N feedback regulation of symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> fixation in white clover (*Trifolium repens* L.). *Journal of Experimental Botany* 51: 1289-1297.

Al-Niemi TS, Kahn ML, McDermott TR (1997) Phosphorus metabolism in the *Rhizobium tropici*-bean symbiosis. *Plant Physiology* 113: 1233-1242.

Al-Niemi TS, Kahn ML, McDermott TR (1998) Phosphorus uptake by bean nodules. *Plant and Soil* 198: 71-78.

Andrews M, Lea PJ, Raven JA, Kindsey K (2004) Can genetic manipulation of plant nitrogen assimilation enzymes result in increased crop yield and

greater N-use efficiency? An assessment. *Annals of Applied Biology* 145: 25-40.

Aono T, Kanada N, Ijima A, Oyaizu H (2001) The response of the phosphate uptake system and the organic acid exudation to phosphate starvation in *Sesbania rostrata*. *Plant Cell Physiology* 42: 1253-1264.

Appels MA, Haaker H. 1988. Identification of cytoplasmic nodule-associated forms of malate-dehydrogenase involved in the symbiosis between *Rhizobium leguminosarum* and *Pisum sativum*. *European Journal of Biochemistry* 171: 515-522.

Appels MA, Haaker H. 1991. Glutamate oxaloacetate transaminase in pea root nodules - participation in a malate/aspartate shuttle between plant and bacteroid. *Plant Physiology* 95: 740-747.

Beck DP, Munns DN (1984) Phosphate nutrition of *Rhizobium* spp. *Applied Environmental Microbiology* 47: 278-282.

Beman JM, Arrigo KR, Matson PA (2005) Agricultural runoff fuels large phytoplankton blooms in vulnerable areas of the ocean. *Nature* 434: 211-214.

Bergersen FJ, Turner GL (1988) Glutamate as a carbon source for N<sub>2</sub>-fixing bacteroids prepared from soybean root nodules. *Journal of General Microbiology* 134: 2441-2448.



Bohloul BB, Ladha JK, Garrity DP, George T (1992) Biological nitrogen fixation for sustainable agriculture: a perspective. *Plant and Soil* 141, 1-11.

Cannon SB, May GD, Jackson SA (2009) Three sequenced legume genomes and many crop species: rich opportunities for translational genomics. *Plant Physiology* 151: 970-977.

Carling DE, Riehle WG, Brown MF, Johnson DR (1978) Effects of a vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus on nitrate reductase and nitrogenase activities in nodulating and non-nodulating soybeans. *Phytopathology* 68: 1590-1596.

Carpenter SR, Caraco NF, Correll DL, Howarth RW, Sharpley AN, Smith VH (1998) Nonpoint pollution of surface waters with phosphorus and nitrogen. *Ecological Applications* 8: 559-568.

Carroll BJ, Mathews A (1990) Nitrate inhibition of nodulation in legumes. In: *Molecular Biology of Symbiotic Nitrogen Fixation* pp. 159-180. Gresshoff PM, Ed., Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Cassman KG, Munns DN, Beck DP (1981) Phosphorus nutrition of *Rhizobium japonicum*: strain differences in phosphate storage and utilization. *Soil Science and Society of American Journal* 45: 517-520.

Cevallos MA, Encarnación S, Leija A, Mora Y, Mora J (1996) Genetic and physiological characterization of a *Rhizobium etli* mutant strain unable to synthesize poly- $\beta$ -hydroxybutyrate. *Journal of Bacteriology* 178: 1646-1654.

Cheng Q. 2008. Perspectives in biological nitrogen fixation research. *Journal of Integrative Plant Biology* 50: 786-798.

Cocking EC, Batchelor CA, Kothari SL, Jain S, Webster G, Jones J, Jotham J, Davey MR. 1997. Cereal symbiotic nitrogen fixation – the interaction of *rhizobia* with cereals for symbiotic nitrogen fixation. *Cashiers Options Méditerranéennes* 8: 67-72.

Colebatch G, Desbrosses G, Ott T, Krusell L, Montanari O, Kloska S, Kopka J, Udvardi M. 2004. Global changes in transcription orchestrate metabolic differentiation during symbiotic nitrogen fixation in *Lotus japonicus*. *Plant Journal* 39: 487-512.

Craig J, Barratt P, Tatge H, DeJardin A, Handley L, Gardner CD, Barber L, Wang T, Hedley C, Martin C. 1999. Mutations at the *rug4* locus alter the carbon and nitrogen metabolism of pea plants through an effect on sucrose synthase. *Plant Journal* 17: 353-362.

Cullimore JV, Bennett MJ (1998) The molecular biology and biochemistry of plant glutamine synthetase from root nodules of *Phaseolus vulgaris* L. and other legumes. *Plant Physiology* 132: 387-393.



Curioni PMG, Hartwig UA, Nösberger J, Schuller KA (1999) Glycolytic flux is adjusted to nitrogenase activity in nodules of detopped and argon-treated alfalfa plants. *Plant Physiology* 119: 445-453.

Dakora FD, Joseph CM, Phillips DA (1993) Common bean root exudates contain elevated levels of daidzein and coumestrol in response to *Rhizobium* inoculation. *Molecular Plant-Microbe Interaction* 6: 665-668.

Dakora FD, Keya SO. 1997. Contribution of legume nitrogen fixation to sustainable agriculture in sub-Saharan Africa. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry* 29: 809-817.

Delhaize E, Ryan PR (1995) Aluminum toxicity and tolerance in plants. *Plant Physiology* 107: 315-321.

Delmer DP (2005) Agriculture in the developing world. Connecting innovations in plant research to downstream applications. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 102: 15739-15746.

De Vries GE, In't Veld P, Kijne JW (1980) Production of organic acids in *Pisum sativum* root nodules as a result of oxygen stress. *Plant Science Letters* 20: 115-123.

De Vries SC, Van de Ven GWJ, Ittersum MK, Giller KE (2010) Resource use efficiency and environmental performance of nine major biofuel crops, processed by first-generation conversion techniques. *Biomass and Bioenergy* 34: 588-601.

Dixon R, Kahn D. 2004. Genetic regulation of biological nitrogen fixation. *National Reviews of Microbiology* 2: 621-631.

Doös BR (1994) Environmental degradation, global food production, and risk for large-scale migrations. *Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences* 23: 124-130.

Drevon J-J, Hartwig UA (1997) Phosphorus deficiency increases the argon-induced decline of nodule nitrogenase activity in soybean and alfalfa. *Planta* 201: 463-469.

Drew MC, Saker LR, Barber SA, Jenkins W (1984) Changes in the kinetics of phosphate and potassium absorption in nutrient-deficient barley roots measured by a solution-depletion technique. *Planta* 160: 490-499.

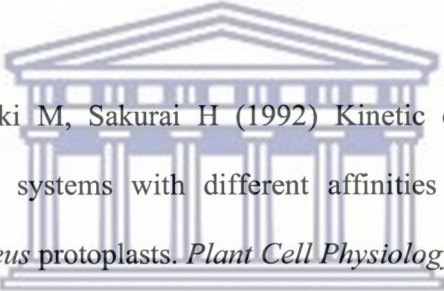
Driscoll BT, Finan TM (1993) NAD<sup>+</sup>-dependent malic enzyme of *Rhizobium meliloti* is required for symbiotic nitrogen fixation. *Molecular Microbiology* 7: 8655-8873.



Duff SMG, Moorhead GBG, Lefebvre DD, Plaxton WC. 1989. Purification and characterisation of a phosphoenolpyruvate phosphatase from *Brassica nigra* suspension cells. *Plant Physiology* 90: 1275-1278.

Ehrhardt DW, Wais R, Long SR. 1996. Calcium spiking in plant root hairs responding to *Rhizobium* nodulation signals. *Cell* 85: 673-681.

Erismann JW, Sutton MA, Galloway J, Klimont Z, Winiwarter W (2008) How a century of ammonia synthesis changed the world. *Nature Geoscience* 1: 636-639.



Furihata T, Suzuki M, Sakurai H (1992) Kinetic characterization of two phosphate uptake systems with different affinities in suspension-cultured *Catharanthus roseus* protoplasts. *Plant Cell Physiology* 33: 1151-1157.

Gage DJ, Margolin W (2000) Hanging by a thread: invasion of legume plants by rhizobia. *Current Opinion in Microbiology* 3: 613-617.

Gálvez S, Hirsch AM, Wycoff KL, Hunt S, Layzell DB, Kondorosi A, Crespi M (2000) Oxygen regulation of a nodule-located carbonic anhydrase in alfalfa. *Plant Physiology* 124: 1059-1068.

Gaude N, Tippmann H, Fletmetakis E, Katinakis P, Udvardi M, Dörmann P (2004) The galactolipid digalactosyldiacylglycerol accumulates in the

peribacteroid membrane of nitrogen-fixing nodules of soybean and Lotus. *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 279: 34624-34630.

Gepts P, Beavis WD, Brummer EC, Shoemaker RC, Stalker T, Weeden NF, Young ND (2005) Legumes as a model plant family. Genomics for food and feed report of the cross-legume advances through genomics conference. *Plant Physiology* 137: 1228-1235.

Gleadow RM, Evans JR, McCaffery S, Cavagnaro TR (2009) Growth and nutritive value of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Cranz.) are reduced when grown at elevated CO<sub>2</sub>. *Plant Biology* 11: 76-82.

Glenn AR, Poole PS, Hudman JF (1980) Succinate uptake by free-living and bacteroid forms of *Rhizobium leguminosarum*. *Journal of General Microbiology* 119: 267-271.

Gordon AJ, Minchin FR, James CL, Komina O (1999) Sucrose synthase in legume nodules is essential for nitrogen fixation. *Plant Physiology* 120: 867-878.

Graham PH, Vance CP (2000) Nitrogen fixation in perspective: an overview of research and extension needs. *Field Crops Research* 65: 93-106.

Graham PH, Vance CP (2003) Legumes: importance and constraints to greater use. *Plant Physiology* 131: 872-877.



Guillon F, Champ MM-J (2002) Carbohydrate fractions of legumes: uses in human nutrition and potential for health. *British Journal of Nutrition* 88: S 293-S306.

Hernández LE, Rojas-Ojeda P, Cooke DT, Carpena-Ruiz R (1996) Purification of pea nodule symbiosomes using an aqueous polymer two-phase system. *Journal of Chromatography* 171-181.

Herrada G, Puppo A, Rigaud J (1989) Uptake of metabolites by bacteroid-containing vesicles and by free bacteroids from French bean nodules. *Journal of General Microbiology* 135: 3165-3171.

Herridge D, Rose I (2000) Breeding for enhanced nitrogen fixation in crop legumes. *Field Crops Research* 65: 229-248.

Högy P, Wieser H, Köhler P, Schwardorf K, Breuer J, Franzaring J, Muntiferung R, Fangmeier A. 2009. Effects of elevated CO<sub>2</sub> on grain yield and quality of wheat: results from a 3-year free-air CO<sub>2</sub> enrichment experiment. *Plant Biology* ISSN 1435-8603 (doi: 10.1111/j.1438-8677.2009.00230.x).

Høgh-Jensen H, Schjoerring JK, Soussana J-F (2002) The influence of phosphorus deficiency on growth and nitrogen fixation of white clover plants. *Annals of Botany* 90: 745-753.

Hoffland E, Findenegg GR, Nelemans JA (1989) Solubilization of rock phosphate by rape. II. Local root exudation of organic acids as a response to P-starvation. *Plant and Soil* 113: 161-165.

Hosie AHF, Allaway D, Jones MA, Walshaw DL, Johnston AWB, Poole PS. 2001. Solute-binding protein-dependent ABC transporters are responsible for solute efflux in addition to solute uptake. *Molecular Microbiology* 40: 1449-1459.

Hungria M, Stacey (1997) Molecular signals exchanged between host plants and *rhizobia*: basic aspects and potential application in agriculture. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry* 29: 519-530.

Hunt S, Layzell DB (1993) Gas exchange of legume nodules and the regulation of nitrogenase activity. *Annual Review of Plant Physiology* 44: 483-511

Iglesias AA, Plaxton WC, Podestá FE (1993) The role of inorganic phosphate in the regulation of C<sub>4</sub> photosynthesis. *Photosynthesis Research* 35: 205-211.

Imas P, Bar-Yosef B, Kafkafi U, Ganmore-Neumann R (1997) Phosphate induced carboxylate and proton release by tomato roots. *Plant and Soil* 191: 35-39.

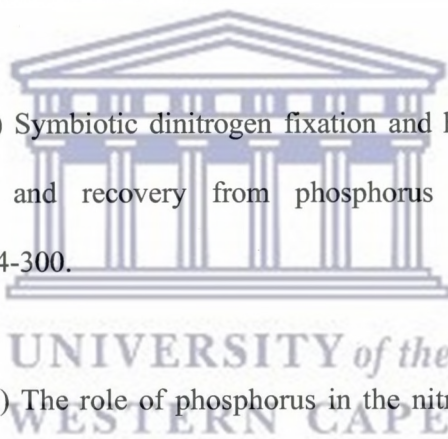


Israel DW, Jackson WA (1982) Ion balance, uptake, and transport processes in N<sub>2</sub>-fixing and nitrate- and urea-dependent soybean plants. *Plant Physiology* 69: 171-178.

Israel DW (1987) Investigation of the role of phosphorus in symbiotic dinitrogen fixation. *Plant Physiology* 84: 294-300.

Israel DW, Rufty JR (1988) Influence of phosphorus nutrition on phosphate and nitrogen utilization efficiencies and associated physiological responses in soybean. *Crop Science* 28: 954-960.

Israel DW (1993) Symbiotic dinitrogen fixation and host-plant growth during development of and recovery from phosphorus deficiency. *Physiology Plantarum* 88: 294-300.



Jakobsen I (1985) The role of phosphorus in the nitrogen fixation by young pea plants (*Pisum sativum*). *Physiologia Plantarum* 64: 190-196.

Jebara M, Aouani ME, Payre H, Drevon J-J (2005) Nodule conductance varied among common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*) genotypes under phosphorus deficiency. *Journal of Plant Physiology* 162: 309-315.

Johnson JF, Allan DL, Vance CP (1994) Phosphorus stress-induced proteoid roots show altered metabolism in *Lupinus albus*. *Plant Physiology* 104: 657-667.

Johnson JF, Allan DL, Vance CP, Weiblen G (1996a) Root carbon dioxide fixation by phosphorus-deficient *Lupinus albus*. Contribution to organic acid exudation by proteoid roots. *Plant Physiology* 112: 19-30.

Johnson JF, Vance CP, Allan DL (1996b) Phosphate deficiency in *Lupinus albus*. Altered lateral root development and enhanced expression of phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase. *Plant Physiology* 112: 31-41.

Johnston M, Foley JA, Holloway T, Kucharik C, Monfreda C (2009) Resetting global expectations from agricultural biofuels. *Environmental Research Letters* 4: 1-9.

Jowit J (2008) Meat must be rationed to four portions a week, says report on climate change. *The Guardian*: 30, September 2008 (p 17).

Kahn ML, Kraus J, Somerville JE (1985) A model of nutrient exchange in the *Rhizobium*-legume symbiosis. In *Nitrogen Fixation Research Progress*, pp. 193-199. Ed. HJ Evans PJ Bottomley, WJ Newton. Dordrecht: Martinus Nijhoff.

Kennedy and Cocking (1997) Biological Nitrogen Fixation: The Global Challenge and Future Needs. Position Paper, The Rockefeller Foundation Bellagio Conference Centre, Italy 8-12 April 1997.



Keyser HH, Li F (1992) Potential for increasing biological nitrogen fixation in soybean. *Plant and Soil* 141: 119-135.

Kielland K (1994) Amino acid absorption by arctic plants: implications for plant nutrition and nitrogen cycling. *Ecology* 75: 2373-2383.

Kouchi H, Yoneyama T (1986) Metabolism of [<sup>13</sup>C]-labeled photosynthate in plant cytosol and bacteroids of root nodules of *Glycine max*. *Physiologia Plantarum* 68: 238-244.

Kouchi H, Fukai K, Kihara A (1991) Metabolism of glutamate and aspartate in bacteroids isolated from soybean root nodules. *Journal of General Microbiology* 137: 2901-2910.

Kumar S, Bourdes A, Poole PS (2005) *De novo* alanine synthesis by bacteroids of *Mesorhizobium loti* is not required for nitrogen transfer in the determinate nodules of *Lotus corniculatus*. *Journal of Bacteriology* 187: 5493-5495.

Kuzma MM, Hunt S, Layzell DB (1993) Role of oxygen in the limitation and inhibition of nitrogenase activity and respiration rate in individual soybean nodules. *Plant Physiology* 101: 161-169.

Lawrie AC, Wheeler CT (1975) Nitrogen fixation in the root nodules of *Vicia faba* L. in relation to the assimilation of carbon. *New Phytologist* 74: 437-445.

Ledgard SF, Steele KW (1992) Biological nitrogen fixation in mixed legume/grass pastures. *Plant and Soil* 141: 137-153.

Li Y, Green LS, Holtzapffel R, Day DA, Bergersen FJ (2001) Supply of O<sub>2</sub> regulates demand for O<sub>2</sub> and uptake of malate by N<sub>2</sub>-fixing bacteroids from soybean nodules. *Microbiology* 147: 663-670.

Lodwig E, Poole P (2003) Metabolism of *Rhizobium* bacteroids. *Critical Reviews in Plant Science* 22: 37-78.

Lodwig EM, Hosie AHF, Bourdès A, Findlay K, Allaway D, Karunakaran R, Downie JA, Poole PS (2003) Amino-acid cycling drives nitrogen fixation in the legume-*Rhizobium* symbiosis. *Nature* 422: 722-726.

Mafongoya PL, Bationo A, Kihara J, Waswa BS (2006) Appropriate technologies to replenish soil fertility in souther Africa. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems* 76: 137-151.

McCloud SA, Smith RG, Schuller KA (2001) Partial purification and characterization of pyruvate kinase from the plant fraction of soybean root nodules. *Physiologia Plantarum* 111: 283-290.



McRae DG, Miller RW, Berndt WB, Joy K (1989) Transport of C<sub>4</sub>-dicarboxylates and amino acids by *Rhizobium meliloti* bacteroids. *Molecular Plant Microbe Interactions* 2: 273-278.

Miller AJ, Cramer MD, (2004) Root nitrogen acquisition and assimilation. *Plant Ecophysiology* 4: 4020-4039.

Miller SS, Driscoll BT, Gregerson RG, Gantt JS, Vance CP (1998) Alfalfa malate dehydrogenase (MDH): molecular cloning and characterization of five different forms reveals a unique nodule-enhanced MDH. *Plant Journal* 15: 173-184.

Minchin FR (1997) Regulation of oxygen diffusion in legume nodules. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry* 29: 881-888.

Morris JB (1997) Special purpose legume genetic resources conserved for agricultural, industrial and pharmaceutical use. *Economic Botany* 51: 251-263.

Ngongi N (2008) Policy implications of high food prices for Africa. *International Food Policy Research Institute Annual Report Essay 2007-2008*, pp 20-28.

Nielsen KL, Eshel A, Lynch JP (2001) The effect of phosphorus availability on the carbon economy of contrasting common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.) genotypes. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 52: 329-339.

Olivera M, Tejera N, Iribarne C, Ocaña A, Lluch C (2004) Growth, nitrogen fixation and ammonium assimilation in common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*): effect of phosphorus. *Physiologia Plantarum* 121: 498-505.

Østergård H, Finckh MR, Fontaine L, Goldringer I, Hoad SP, Kristensen K, Lammerts van Bueren ET, Mascher F, Munk L, Wolfe MS (2009) Time for a shift in crop production: embracing complexity through diversity at all levels. *Journal of Science and Food Agriculture* 89: 1439-1445.

Parsons R, Stanforth A, Raven JA, Sprent JI (1993) Nodule growth and activity may be regulated by a feedback mechanism involving phloem nitrogen. *Plant, Cell and Environment* 16: 125-136.

Paul MJ, Stitt M (1993) Effects of nitrogen and phosphorus deficiencies on levels of carbohydrates, respiratory enzymes and metabolites in seedlings of tobacco and their response to exogenous sucrose. *Plant, Cell and Environment* 16: 1047-1057.

Pilbeam DJ, Cakmak I, Marschner H, Kirkby EA (1993) Effect of withdrawal of phosphorus on nitrate assimilation and PEP carboxylase activity in tomato. *Plant and Soil* 154: 111-117.



Plaxton WC (1996) The organization and regulation of plant glycolysis. *Annual Reviews of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* 47: 185-214.

Popkin BM (2009) Reducing meat consumption has multiple benefits for the world's health. *Archives of Internal Medicine* 169: 543-545.

Preiss J (1984) Starch, sucrose biosynthesis and partitioning of carbon in plants are regulated by orthophosphate and triose-phosphate. *Trends in Biochemical Science* 9: 24-27.

Prell J, Poole P. 2006. Metabolic changes of rhizobia in legume nodules. *Trends in Microbiology* 14: 161-168.

Price GD, Day DA, Gresshoff PM (1987). Rapid isolation of intact peribacteroid envelopes from soybean nodules and demonstration of selective permeability to metabolites. *Journal of Plant Physiology* 130: 157-164.

Puente-Rodriguez D (2009) Biotechnologizing *Jatropha* for local sustainable development. *Agriculture and Human Values* 27: 351-363.

Ratajczak L, Ratajczak W, Koroniak D (1989) Detection of nodule-specific forms of malate dehydrogenase from root nodules of *Lupinus luteus*. *Biochemica Physiologia Pflanzen* 184: 243-248.

Reibach PH, Streeter JG (1984) Evaluation of active versus passive uptake of metabolites by *Rhizobium japonicum* bacteroids. *Journal of Bacteriology* 159: 47-52.

Reid CJ, Poole PS (1998) Roles of DctA and DctB in signal detection by the dicarboxylic acid transport system of *Rhizobium leguminosarum*. *Journal of Bacteriology* 180: 2660–2669.

Rengel Z (2002) Breeding for better symbiosis. *Plant and Soil* 245: 147-162.

Ribet J, Drevon J-J (1995) Increase in permeability to oxygen and in oxygen uptake of soybean nodules under limiting phosphorus nutrition. *Physiologia Plantarum* 94: 298-304.

Rogers A, Gibon Y, Stitt M, Morgan P, Bernacchi CJ, Ort DR, Long SP (2006) Increased C availability at elevated carbon dioxide concentration improves N assimilation in a legume. *Plant, Cell and Environment* 29: 1651-1658.

Rolin DB, Pfeffer PE, Boswell RT, Schmidt JL, Tu SI (1989) *In vivo* <sup>31</sup>P NMR spectroscopic studies of soybean *Bradyrhizobium* symbiosis. Compartmentation and distribution of P metabolites. *FEBS Letters* 254: 203-206.



Ronson CW, Lyttleton P, Robertson JG (1981) C<sub>4</sub>-dicarboxylate transport mutants of *Rhizobium trifolii* form ineffective nodules on *Trifolium repens*. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science* 78: 4284-4288.

Rosendahl L, Dilworth MJ, Glenn AR (1992) Exchange of metabolites across the peribacteroid membrane in pea root nodules. *Journal of Plant Physiology* 139: 635-638.

Rosendahl L, Mouritzen P, Rudbeck A (2001) Nitrogen transfer in the interface between the symbionts in pea root nodules. *Plant and Soil* 230: 31-37.

Rosendahl L, Vance CP, Pedersen WB (1990) Products of dark CO<sub>2</sub> fixation in pea root nodules support bacteroid metabolism. *Plant Physiology* 93: 12-19.

Rouwé B (2009) Africa's soils to be digitally mapped. [Online]. Available: (<http://www.scidev.net/en/news/africa-s-soils-to-be-digitally-mapped.html>). [13 January 2009].

Ruel M, Hoddinott J (2008) Investing in early childhood nutrition. *IFPRI Policy Brief* 8. Washington DC: International Food Policy Research Institute.

Rychter AM, Chauveau M, Bomsel JL, Lance C (1992) The effect of phosphate deficiency on mitochondrial activity and adenylate levels in bean roots. *Plant Physiology* 84: 80-86.

Rychter AM, Randall DD (1994) The effect of phosphate deficiency on carbohydrate metabolism in bean roots. *Physiologia Plantarum* 91: 383-388.

Sa T-M, Israel DW. 1991. Energy status and functioning of phosphorus-deficient soybean nodules. *Plant Physiology* 97: 928-935.

Salminen SO, Streeter JG (1987) Uptake and metabolism of carbohydrates by *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* bacteroids. *Plant Physiology* 83: 535-540.

Salminen SO, Streeter JG (1992) Labeling of carbon pools in *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* and *Rhizobium leguminosarum* bv. *viciae* bacteroids following incubation of intact nodules with CO<sub>2</sub>. *Plant Physiology* 100: 597-604.

Sanchez PA, Sheperd KD, Soule MJ, Place FM, Buresh RJ, Izac AMN, Mokwunye AU, Kwesiga FR, Ndiritu CG, Woomer PL (1997) Soil Fertility replenishment in Africa: An investment in natural resource capital. In: Replenishing Soil Fertility in Africa, SSSA Special Publication 51. (Eds. RJ Buresh, PA Sanchez and F Calhoun). (Soil Science Society of America, Madison, WI, USA).

Sanchez PA (2002) Soil fertility and hunger in Africa. *Science* 295: 2019-2020.



Sanchez PA (2010) Tripling crop yields in the tropical Africa. *Nature Geoscience* 3: 299-300.

Schubert KR (1986) Products of biological nitrogen fixation in higher plants: synthesis and transport, and metabolism. *Annual Review of Plant Physiology* 37: 539-574.

Schulze J, Tesfaye M, Litjens RHM, Bucciarelli B, Trepp G, Miller S, Samac D, Allan D, Vance CP (2002) Malate plays a central role in plant nutrition. *Plant and Soil* 247: 133-139.

Schulze J (2004) How are nitrogen fixation rates regulated in legumes? *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science* 167: 125-137.

Schulze J, Drevon J-J (2005) P-deficiency increases the O<sub>2</sub> uptake per N<sub>2</sub> reduced in alfalfa. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 56: 1779-1784.

Serraj R, Vadez V, Denison RF, Sinclair TR (1999) Involvement of ureides in nitrogen fixation inhibition in soybean. *Plant Physiology* 119: 289-296.

Serraj R, Adu-Gyamfi H (2004) Role of symbiotic nitrogen fixation in the improvement of legume productivity under stressed environments. *West African Journal of Applied Ecology* 6: 95-109.

Sheeran J (2008) High global food prices: the challenges and opportunities. *International Food Policy Research Institute Annual Report Essay 2007-2008*, pp 11-18.

Shetty P (2010) The challenge of improving nutrition: facts and figures. [Online]. Available: (<http://www.scidev.net/en/features/the-challenge-of-improving-nutrition-facts-and-figures-1.html>). (20 January 2010).

Sinclair T (2004) Increasing yield potential of legume crops – similarities and contrasts with cereals. *Proceedings of the 4<sup>th</sup> International Crop Science Congress*, 26 Sept – 1 October 2004, Brisbane, Australia.

Sinha R, Cross AJ, Graubard BI (2009) Meat intake and mortality. A prospective study of over half a million people. *Archives of Internal Medicine* 169: 562-571.



Smil V (1991) Population growth and nitrogen: an exploration of a critical existential link. *Population and Development Review* 17: 569-601.

Smil V (1997) Global population and the nitrogen cycle. *Scientific American* 277: 76-81.

Smil V (1999) Detonator of the population explosion. *Nature* 400: 415.



Smith PMC, Atkins CA (2002) Purine biosynthesis. Big in cell division, even bigger in nitrogen assimilation. *Plant Physiology* 128: 793-802.

Stern WR. 1993. Nitrogen fixation and transfer in intercrop systems. *Field Crops Research* 34: 335-356.

Stougaard J. 2000. Regulators and regulation of legume root nodule development. *Plant Physiology* 124: 531-540.

Sulieman S, Fischinger S, Schulze J (2008) N-feedback regulation of N<sub>2</sub> fixation in *Medicago truncatula* under P-deficiency. *General Applied Plant Physiology* 34: 33-54.

Szafran MM, Haaker H. 1995. Properties of the peribacteroid membrane ATPase of pea root-nodules and its effect on the nitrogenase activity. *Plant Physiology* 108: 1227-1232.

Tabrett CA, Copeland L (2000) Biochemical controls of citrate synthase in chickpea bacteroids. *Archives of Microbiology* 173: 42-48.

Tang C, Hinsinger P, Drevon JJ, Jaillard B. 2001. Phosphorus deficiency impairs early nodule functioning and enhances proton release in roots of *Medicago truncatula* L. *Annals of Botany* 88: 131-138.

Theodorou ME, Plaxton, WC (1993) Metabolic adaptation of plant respiration to nutritional phosphate deprivation. *Plant Physiology* 101: 339-334.

Tilman D (1999) Global environmental impacts of agricultural expansion: the need for sustainable and efficient practices. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 96: 5995-6000.

Tilman D, Fargione J, Wolff B, D'Antonio C, Dobson A, Howarth R, Schindler D, Schlesinger WH, Simberloff D, Swackhamer D (2001) Forecasting agriculturally driven global environmental change. *Science* 292: 281-284.

Tomczak J (2006) Implications of fossil fuel dependence for the food system. <http://www.energybulletin.net/node/17036>

Trepp GB, Van de Mortel M, Yoshioka H, Miller SS, Samac DA, Gantt JS, Vance CP (1999) NADH-Glu synthase in alfalfa root nodules. Genetic regulation and cellular expression. *Plant Physiology* 119: 817-828.

Trivedi B (2008) What is your dinner doing to the climate? *New Scientist* 2673: 28-32.

Udvardi MK, Salom CL, Day DA (1988) Transport of L-glutamate across the bacteroid membrane but not the peribacteroid membrane from soybean root nodules. *Molecular Plant and Microbe Interaction* 1: 250-254.



Udvardi MK, Ou Yang L-J, Young S, Day DA (1990) Sugar and amino acid transport across symbiotic membranes from soybean nodules. *Molecular Plant-Microbe Interactions* 3: 334-340.

Udvardi MK, Day DA (1997) Metabolite transport across symbiotic membranes of legume nodules. *Annual Review of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* 48: 493-523.

Vance CP, Boylan KLM, Maxwell CA, Heichel GH, Hardman LL (1985) Transport and partitioning of CO<sub>2</sub> fixed by root nodules of ureide and amide producing legumes. *Plant Physiology* 78: 774-778.

Vance CP (2001) Symbiotic nitrogen fixation and phosphorus acquisition: plant nutrition in a world of declining renewable resources. *Plant Physiology* 127: 390-397.

Vidal J (2007) The looming food crisis. *The Guardian*. Wednesday August 29.

Vitousek PM, Naylor R, Crews T, David MB, Drinkwater LE, Holland E, Johnes PJ, Katzenberger J, Martinelli LA, Matson PA, Nziguheba G, Ojima D, Palm CA, Robertson GP, Sanchez PA, Townsend AR, Zhang FS (2009) Nutrient imbalances in agricultural development. *Science* 324: 1519-1520.

Voegelé RT, Mitsch MJ, Finan MJ (1999) Characterization of two members of a novel malic enzyme class. *Biochimica Biophysica Acta* 1432: 275-285.

Walker WA, Sivak MN (1986) Photosynthesis and phosphate: a cellular affair? *Trends in Biochemistry Science* 11: 176-179.

Walshaw DL, Poole PS. 1996. The general L-amino acid permease of *Rhizobium leguminosarum* is an ABC uptake system that influences efflux of solutes. *Molecular Microbiology* 21: 1239-1252.

Waters JK, Hughes BL, Purcell LC, Gerhardt KO, Mawhinney TP, Emerich DW. 1998. Alanine, not ammonia, is excreted from N<sub>2</sub>-fixing soybean nodule bacteroids. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science* 95: 12038-12042.

Webster G, Gough C, Vasse J, Batchelor CA, O'Callaghan KJ, Kothari SL, Davey MR, Dénarié J, Cocking EC (1997) Interactions of rhizobia with rice and wheat. *Plant and Soil* 194: 115-122.

White J, Prell J, James EK, Poole P. 2007. Nutrient sharing between symbionts. *Plant Physiology* 144: 604-614.

Yurgel SN, Kahn ML. 2004. Dicarboxylate transport by rhizobia. *FEMS Microbiology Reviews* 28: 489-501.



Yurgel SN, Kahn ML. 2005. *Sinorhizobium meliloti dctA* mutants with partial ability to transport dicarboxylic acids. *Journal of Bacteriology* 187: 1161-1172.



UNIVERSITY *of the*  
WESTERN CAPE

# CHAPTER 3

## Nitrogen and carbon costs of soybean and lupin root systems during phosphate starvation



UNIVERSITY of the  
WESTERN CAPE

### Publication citation:

Le Roux MR, Khan S, Valentine AJ (2009) Nitrogen and carbon costs of soybean and lupin root systems during phosphate starvation. *Symbiosis* **48**: 102-109.

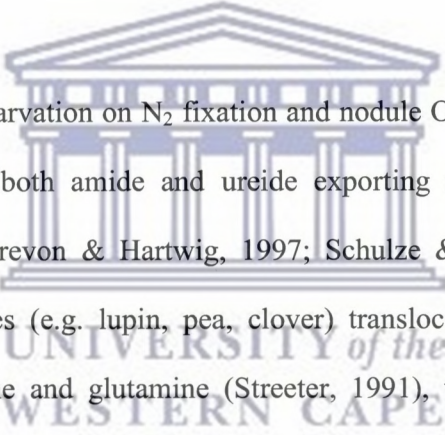


### 3.1 Abstract

Phosphate (P) starvation is one of the most limiting nutrients to N<sub>2</sub> fixation in legumes. Soybeans and lupins present different climatic origins, nodule morphologies and metabolic complexities, which may have various adaptive responses to short-term P starvation. Lupins and soybeans were cultivated hydroponically for 3 weeks. Short-term P starvation was induced for 14 days by switching the P supply to 2 μM P. During P starvation, the lupins showed a lower decline in nodular P concentrations and maintained their biological N<sub>2</sub> fixation (BNF), in contrast to the soybeans. The lupins also maintained their photosynthetic rates and the nodular construction and growth respiration costs under P starvation, whilst soybeans showed a decrease in photosynthetic rates and an increase in nodular construction and growth respiration costs under P starvation. There was also a shift towards more organic acid synthesis, relative to amino acid synthesis, in lupin nodules than in soybean nodules under P starvation. The lupins had higher amino acid concentrations in their nodules, whilst the soybean nodules maintained their ureide levels at the expense of a decline in amino acids. These results indicate that lupins may be better adapted to maintaining BNF during short-term P starvation than the soybeans.

### 3.2 Introduction

P limitation is one of the most notable environmental constraints for legumes (Jakobsen, 1985, Israel, 1987, Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002). The high sensitivity of the N<sub>2</sub> fixation process to environmental conditions may be attributed to the C costs (Mengel, 1994). Legumes relying on N<sub>2</sub> fixation require more P than when N is acquired from soil mineral N (Sa & Israel, 1991; Ribet & Drevon, 1995; Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998; Tang *et al.*, 2001). The high requirement of P may be linked to its role in nodule carbon and energy metabolism, with at least the plant cell fraction being energy limited under low P supply (Sa & Israel, 1991).



The effect of P starvation on N<sub>2</sub> fixation and nodule O<sub>2</sub> permeability has been demonstrated for both amide and ureide exporting nodule types (Ribet & Drevon, 1995; Drevon & Hartwig, 1997; Schulze & Drevon, 2001). Most temperate legumes (e.g. lupin, pea, clover) translocate fixed N as amides, notably asparagine and glutamine (Streeter, 1991), whilst tropical legumes (e.g. soybean, cowpea, common bean) export ureides, most commonly allantoin and allantoic acid. Lupins and soybeans also differ in other means, such as being of temperate and tropical origin and having morphologically distinct nodules. However, as noted by Streeter (1991), the two different sets of metabolic capabilities of amino acid and ureide exporting legumes, present a metabolic complexity that is perhaps unsurpassed by other more typical plant systems. Although the ureide exporters require several more enzymes for ureide biosynthesis than the few for asparagine synthesis the ATP and



reductant expenditure per N assimilated is similar to that of amide exporting legumes (Smith & Atkins, 2002).

Due to the energy costs of N<sub>2</sub> fixation, overall C expenditure is high under non-stress conditions and varies considerably among legume species and varieties (Vance, 1998; Schulze, 2004). Since lupins and soybeans are from temperate and tropical origins and present a difference in N-metabolism and nodule morphology, it is likely that they may show different physiological responses to P starvation. The aim of this study was to draw comparative analyses between the nitrogen and carbon costs imposed on the two legume systems during short-term P starvation.

### **3.3 Materials and methods**

#### **3.3.1 *Plant material and growth conditions***

Seeds of *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil) and *Glycine max* (var. PAN 626) were germinated in vermiculite. At planting, seeds were inoculated with a rhizobial inoculum specific for each species obtained from a commercial seed company. Seeds were coated in a saturated sucrose solution and 2 g of inoculum / 150 seeds were added and mixed. The seeds were spread out, away from direct sunlight to allow the inoculum to dry, before the seeds were planted.

Seedlings were transferred seven to 10 d after germination to 20 l hydroponic tanks that were purged with ambient air. The nutrient solution consisted of 4 mM CaCl<sub>2</sub>, 1.5 mM MgSO<sub>4</sub>, 2 mM K<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, 2 mM NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>/Na<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub>,

139  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{H}_3\text{BO}_3$ , 21  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{MnSO}_4$ , 2  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{ZnSO}_4$ , 3  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{CuSO}_4$ , 0.2  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{Na}_2\text{MoO}_4$ , 89  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{FeEDTA}$  and no N (pH 5.8) (Hewitt, 1966). Solutions were changed once a week. Seedlings were inserted through holes in the lids of the tanks and fixed in the lid of the hydroponic tank with foam rubber at their bases. Since the aim of the experiments was to investigate the effects of abrupt P deprivation, plants were initially grown on a non-limiting P supply (2 mM P) for approximately three weeks, after which the P supply was withdrawn from half of the plants. Phosphorus starvation was induced for 14 days, after which plants were harvested. Although this represents a short period of P starvation after 3 weeks of normal growth, the control group of plants, was maintained at sufficient P supply, so that the short-term departure from these sufficient conditions could be physiologically recorded. The plants were grown in an east-facing glasshouse in Cape Town, South Africa. The range of midday irradiances were between 500 and 670  $\mu\text{mol m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$  and the average day/night temperatures and humidities were 21/16 °C and 34/73%, respectively.

### 3.3.2 *Photosynthesis*

The youngest fully expanded leaves for each plant were used for the photosynthetic determinations. Light-response curves were used to determine the irradiance (1100  $\mu\text{mol} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ) at which to conduct the photosynthetic rates. Readings were taken at midday, using a portable infrared gas analyzer (LCA-Pro, ADC, Herts SG12 9TA, England).



### 3.3.3 *P, N and C determination*

Inorganic orthophosphate ( $P_i$ ) and pyrophosphate ( $PP_i$ ) measurements were made on fresh nodules. Approximately 0.5 g of fresh nodule mass was ground to a fine powder in liquid nitrogen and was extracted in 500  $\mu$ l 10% trichloroacetic acid (TCA) at 4 °C as described by Rychter & Mikulska (1990). This was diluted 3 times with cold 5% TCA and centrifuged for 10 min at 2 500 g at 4 °C. The supernatant was removed and centrifuged a further 10 min at 13 000 g at 4 °C. The resultant supernatant was kept on ice (or stored -20°C) until ready for use.  $PP_i$  and  $P_i$  concentrations were determined indirectly via pyrophosphatase activity, which was assayed by incubating 10  $\mu$ l of extract with 190  $\mu$ l of 50 mM Tris-HCl (pH 8.0) containing 2.4 U/assay inorganic pyrophosphatase, 20 mM  $MgCl_2$  and 1.3 mM Na- $PP_i$  for 15 min (Mustroph *et al.*, 2005).

For total C, N and P concentrations, dried and milled samples were analysed by a commercial laboratory (BemLab, De Beers Rd, Somerset West, South Africa), using inductively coupled mass spectrometry (ICP-MS) and a LECO-nitrogen analyser with Spectrascan standards (Norway).

### 3.3.4 *Construction cost and growth respiration*

Tissue construction costs ( $\text{mmol C} \cdot \text{g}^{-1} \text{DW}$ ) and growth respiration, ( $\text{mol CO}_2 \cdot \text{d}^{-1}$ ) were calculated according to Mortimer *et al.*, (2005, 2008), as modified from the equations used by Peng *et al.*, (1993). Construction costs represent the C required for tissue growth, whilst growth respiration is the daily respiration associated with new growth (Peng *et al.*, 1993).

### 3.3.5 Nitrogen fixation

The  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  analyses were carried out at the Archeometry Department, University of Cape Town, using a Finnigan Matt 252 mass spectrometer (Finnigan MAT GmbH, Bremen, Germany), which was connected to a CHN analyser by a Finnigan MAT Conflo control unit. The seed corrected  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  values (Boddey *et al.* 1995) were used to determine the percentage N derived from the atmosphere (%Ndfa). Ndfa was calculated according to Shearer & Kohl (1986):

$$\%Ndfa = 100 * ((\delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{reference plant}} - \delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{legume}}) / (\delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{reference plant}} - B))$$

Where  $B$  is the  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  natural abundance of the N derived from biological N fixation of the above-ground tissue of *Lens vulgaris*, grown in a N free culture, according to Shearer & Kohl (1986). The  $B$ -value of *Lens vulgaris* was determined as -0.76‰.

### 3.3.6 Amino acid and Ureide concentrations

Amino acid concentrations were determined according to the ninhydrin method by Rosen *et al.*, (1957) using leucine as a standard. Ureides were measured as allantoin concentration according to Trijbels & Vogel (1966).

### 3.3.7 Enzyme activities

The extraction of the organic acid synthesizing enzymes, *phosphoenol pyruvate carboxylase* (PEPc) and *NADH-malate dehydrogenase* (MDH) was performed



according to Ocaña *et al.* (1996). The procedure was modified so that 0.5 g of tissue was extracted in 2 ml of extraction buffer consisting of 100 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.8), 1 mM EDTA, 5 mM dithiothreitol (DTT), 20% (v/v) ethylene glycol, plus 2% (m/v) insoluble polyvinylpoly pyrrolidone (PVPP) and one Complete Protease Inhibitor Cocktail tablet (Roche) per 50 ml of buffer. The extract of N assimilating enzymes, *aspartate amino transferase* (AAT), *glutamine synthetase* (GS) and *glutamate synthase* (GOGAT) was prepared according to the method of Olivera *et al.* (2004). All extractions were carried out at 4 °C and the crude extract was used in colourimetric assays for PEPc, MDH, GS, GOGAT and AAT according to Le Roux *et al.* (2006).

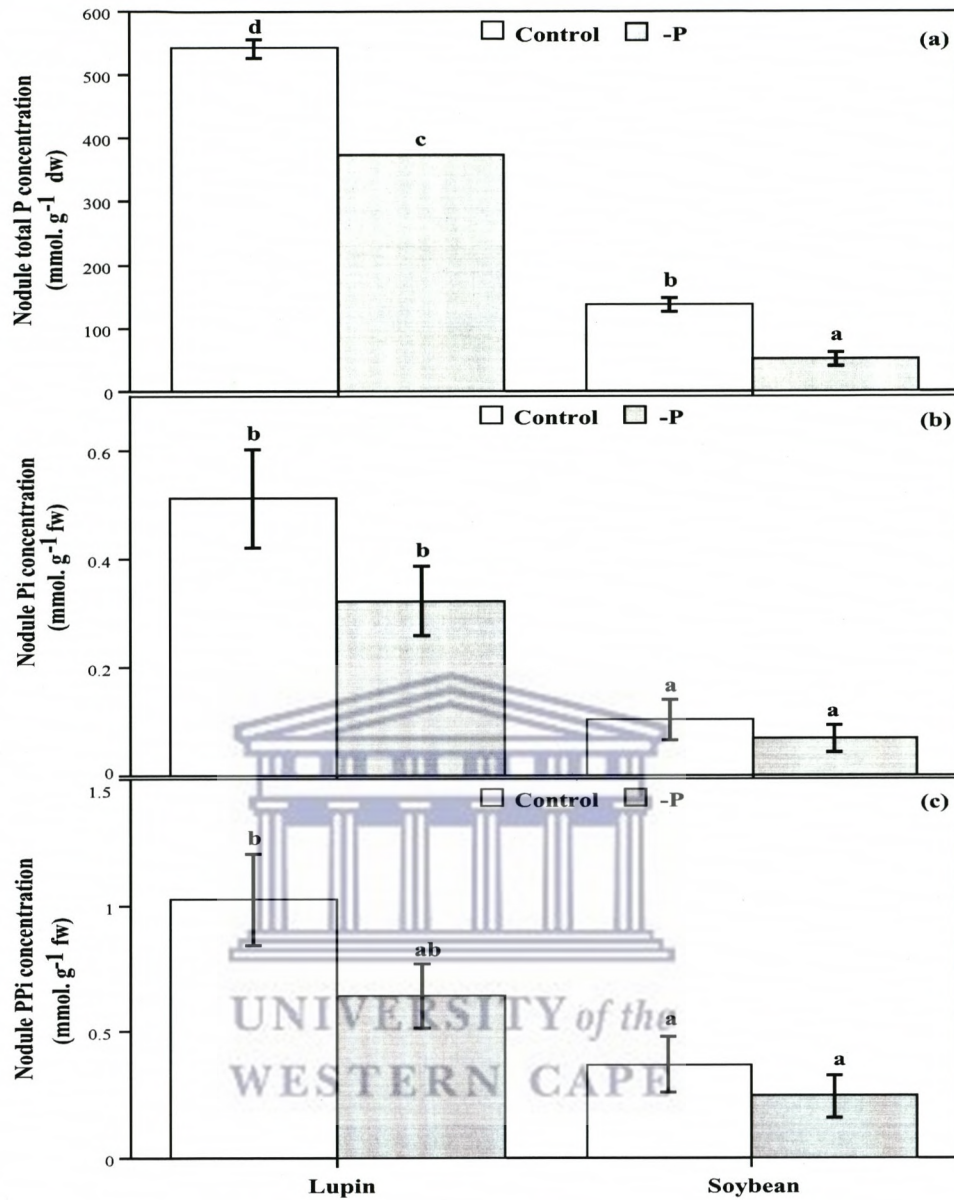
### 3.3.8 Statistical analysis

The percentage data were arcsine transformed (Zar, 1999). Significant differences between treatment means were separated using a *post hoc* Student Newman Kuehls (SuperAnova, Abacus Concepts, USA), multiple range test ( $P \leq 0.05$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between treatments.

## 3.4 Results

### 3.4.1 Nodular P concentration and utilization efficiency

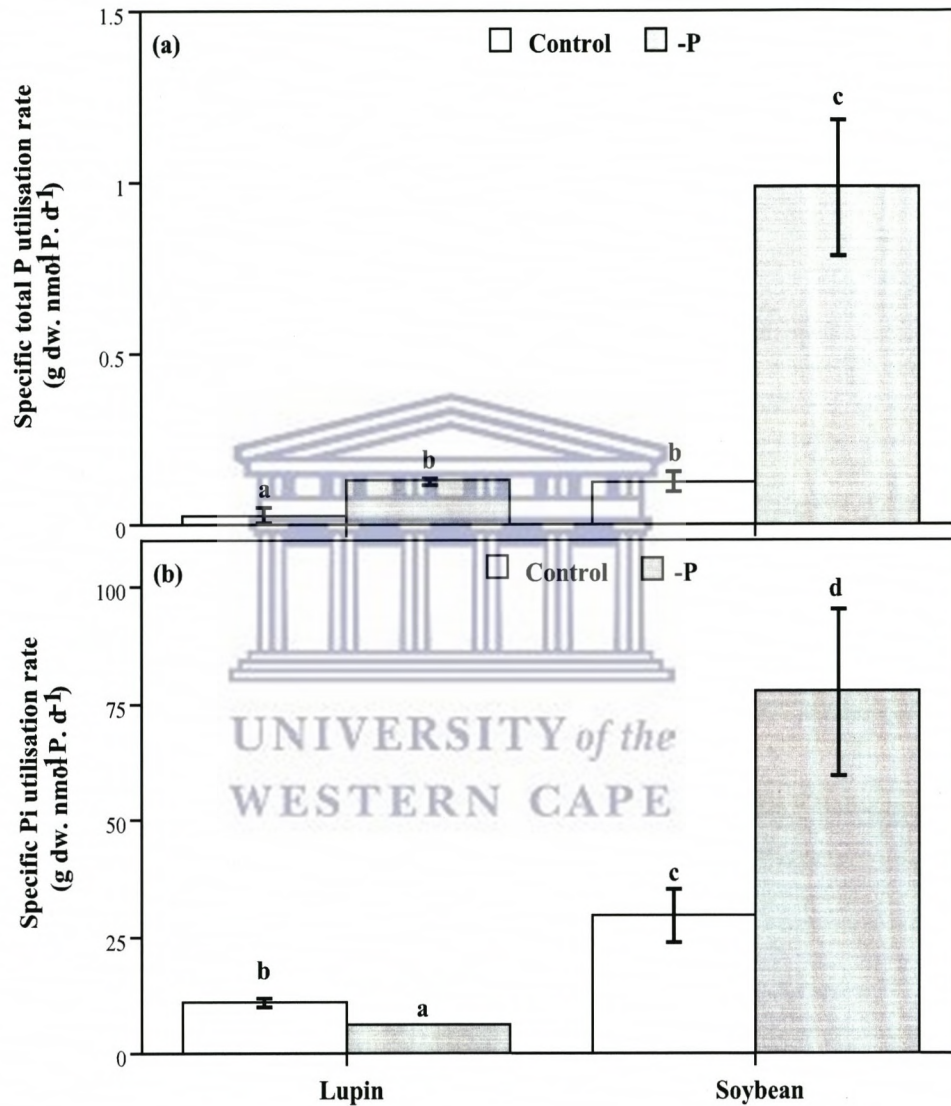
Nodular  $P_i$  (Fig. 1b) and  $PP_i$  (Fig. 1c) concentrations remained unchanged during P deficiency, but the total P (Fig. 1a) concentrations declined and this decline was more pronounced for soybeans (60%) than for lupins (35%).



**Figure 1.** (a) The nodular total phosphate (P), (b) orthophosphate ( $P_i$ ), and (c) and pyrophosphate ( $PP_i$ ) concentrations of lupin (*Lupinus angustifolius*) and soybean (*Glycine max.*). All plants were grown 3 weeks in hydroponic culture with N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm  $CO_2$ . A low P condition was induced for 14 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2  $\mu$ M P (-P). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (Control) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).



The specific total P (Fig. 2a) and  $P_i$  (Fig. 2b) utilisation rates for soybean nodules, increased significantly under P starvation, compared with the soybean controls and the P starved lupins.

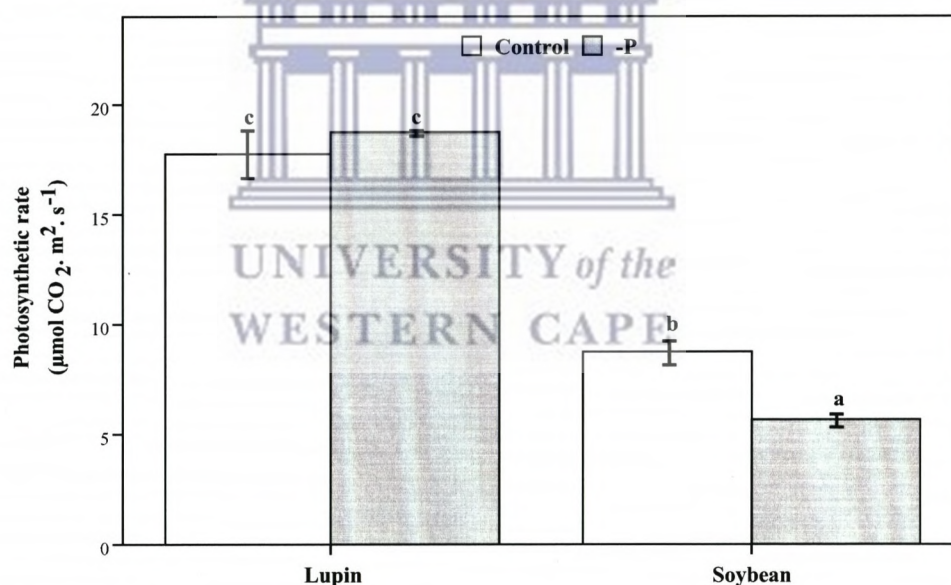


**Figure 2.** (a) The specific total phosphate (P) utilisation rate and (b) specific orthophosphate ( $P_i$ ) utilisation rate of lupin (*Lupinus angustifolius*) and soybean (*Glycine max.*). All plants were grown 3 weeks in hydroponic culture with N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm  $CO_2$ . A low P condition was induced for 14 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2  $\mu$ M P (-P). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (Control) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

Indeed, in spite of the decline in root growth under P starvation, the growths of nodule and shoot remained unaffected in both legumes (Table 1, *see page 96*).

### 3.4.2 Nodule respiration and photosynthesis

During P starvation, the nodule construction costs and growth respiration of lupins remained unchanged, in contrast with those of soybeans, which increased with P deficiency (Table 1). Lupins generally had higher photosynthetic rates than soybeans (Fig. 3). Although the photosynthetic rates in lupins remained unchanged during P deficiency, soybeans showed a decrease during P starvation (Fig. 3).



**Figure 3.** The photosynthetic rates of lupin (*Lupinus angustifolius*) and soybean (*Glycine max.*). All plants were grown 3 weeks in hydroponic culture with N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub>. A low P condition was induced for 14 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2 μM P (-P). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (Control) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

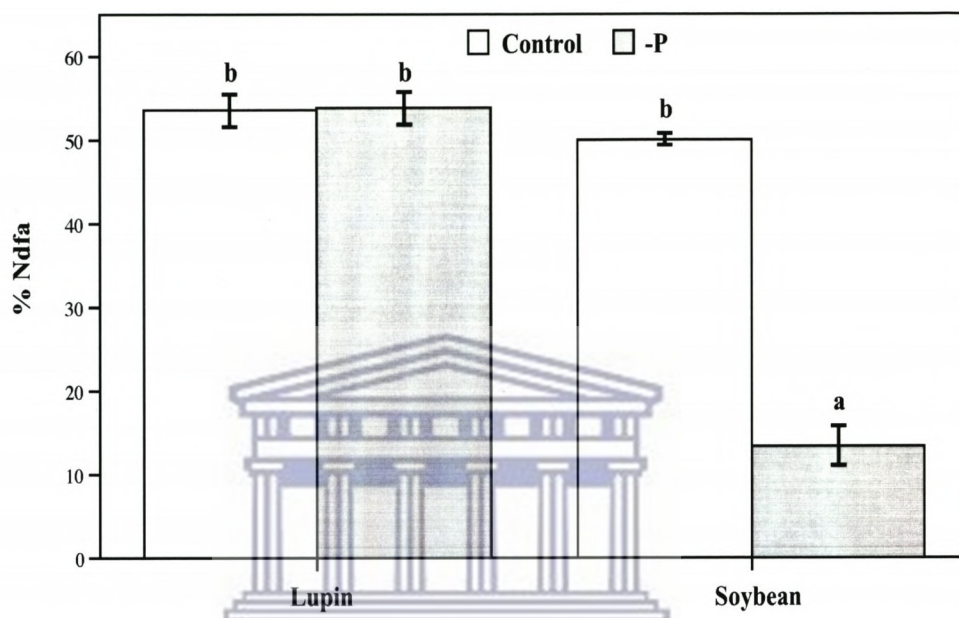


**Table 1.** Biomass and nutrients of lupins (*Lupinus angustifolius*) and soybeans (*Glycine max.*). All plants were grown 3 weeks in hydroponic culture with N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub> in the root zone. A low P condition was induced for 14 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2 μM P (-P). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (Control) supply. Values are presented as means (*n* = 4). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment (*P* ≤ 0.05).

| Biomass  | Lupin    |          | Soybean  |          |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|  | Control  | -P       | Control  | -P       |
| <b>Plant growth</b>  |          |          |          |          |
| Plant DW (g. plant <sup>-1</sup> )                                 | 0.90 c   | 0.77 b   | 0.75 b   | 0.62 a   |
| Shoot DW (g. plant <sup>-1</sup> )                                 | 0.65 b   | 0.58 b   | 0.30 a   | 0.25 a   |
| Root DW (g. plant <sup>-1</sup> )                                  | 0.18 b   | 0.12 a   | 0.40 d   | 0.33 c   |
| Root:Shoot   | 0.28 a   | 0.26 a   | 1.60 b   | 1.21 b   |
| <b>Nodule growth</b>   |          |          |          |          |
| Nodule DW (g. plant <sup>-1</sup> )                                | 0.07 b   | 0.06 ab  | 0.04 a   | 0.04 a   |
| Nodule number  | 171 b    | 169 b    | 12 a     | 15 a     |
| Normalised nodule weight (g. g <sup>-1</sup> shoot)                | 0.10 a   | 0.10 a   | 0.16 b   | 0.13 ab  |
| <b>Nodule C cost</b>   |          |          |          |          |
| Nodule construction cost (mmol C. g <sup>-1</sup> DW)              | 281.28 c | 295.87 c | 218.51 a | 264.83 b |
| Nodule growth respiration (mol CO <sub>2</sub> . g <sup>-1</sup> ) | 0.28 a   | 0.27 a   | 0.22 a   | 0.37 b   |
| <b>N concentrations (mmol N.g<sup>-1</sup> DW)</b>                 |          |          |          |          |
| Root N: Shoot N  | 0.35 a   | 0.40 a   | 0.72 c   | 0.60 b   |

### 3.4.3 Nitrogen metabolism

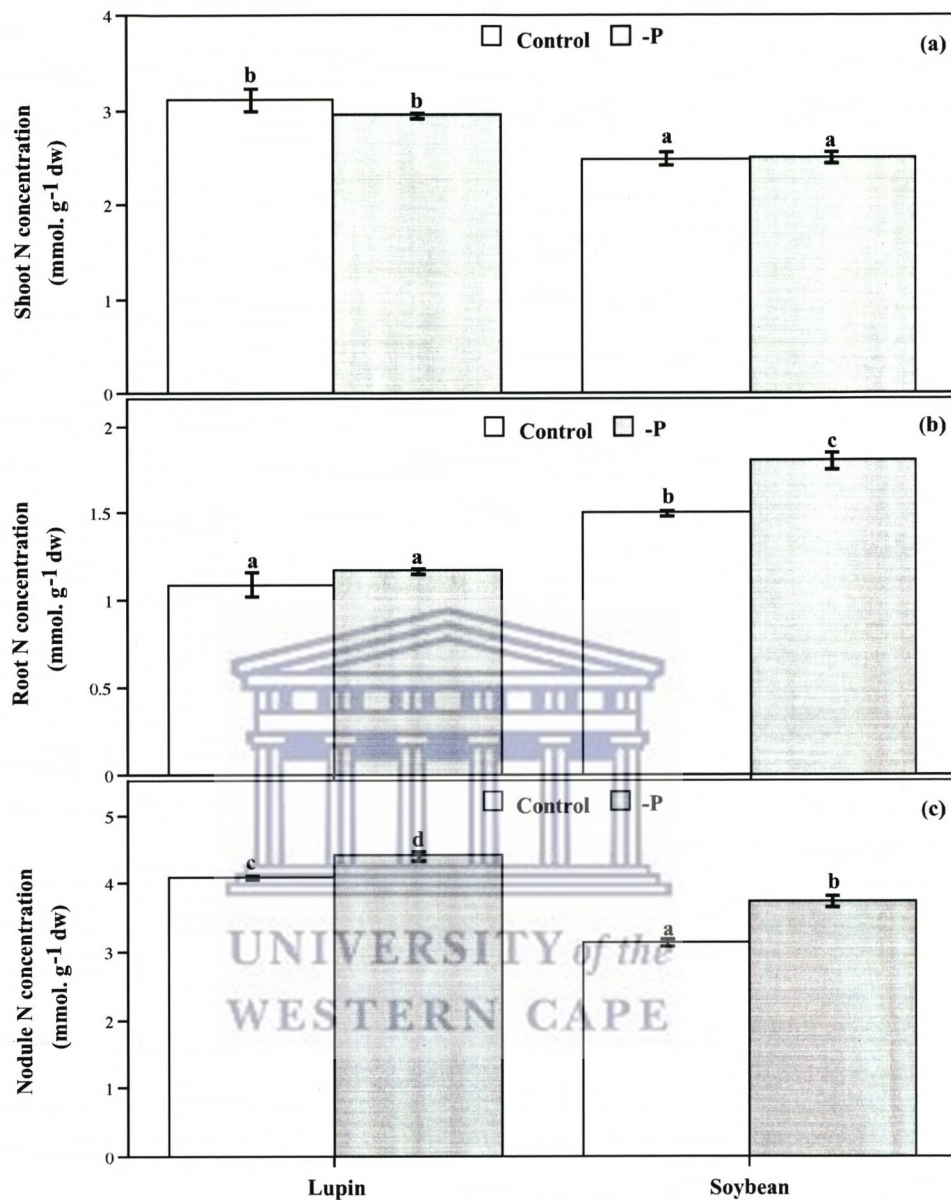
During P starvation, lupins maintained the percentage nitrogen derived from atmosphere (%Ndfa), compared with soybeans, which showed a decline in the %Ndfa (Fig. 4).



**Figure 4.** The percentage of nitrogen derived from atmosphere (%Ndfa) of lupin (*Lupinus angustifolius*) and soybean (*Glycine max.*). All plants were grown 3 weeks in hydroponic culture with N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub>. A low P condition was induced for 14 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2 μM P (-P). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (Control) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

The tissue N levels remained largely unchanged for lupins, except for the nodule N, which increased under LP. The N concentrations of the aerial parts of soybeans were unaffected, whereas the belowground portions, that is the root and nodule N concentrations had increased significantly (Fig. 5a,b,c).

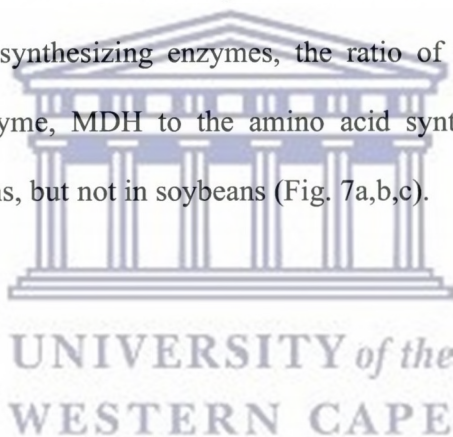




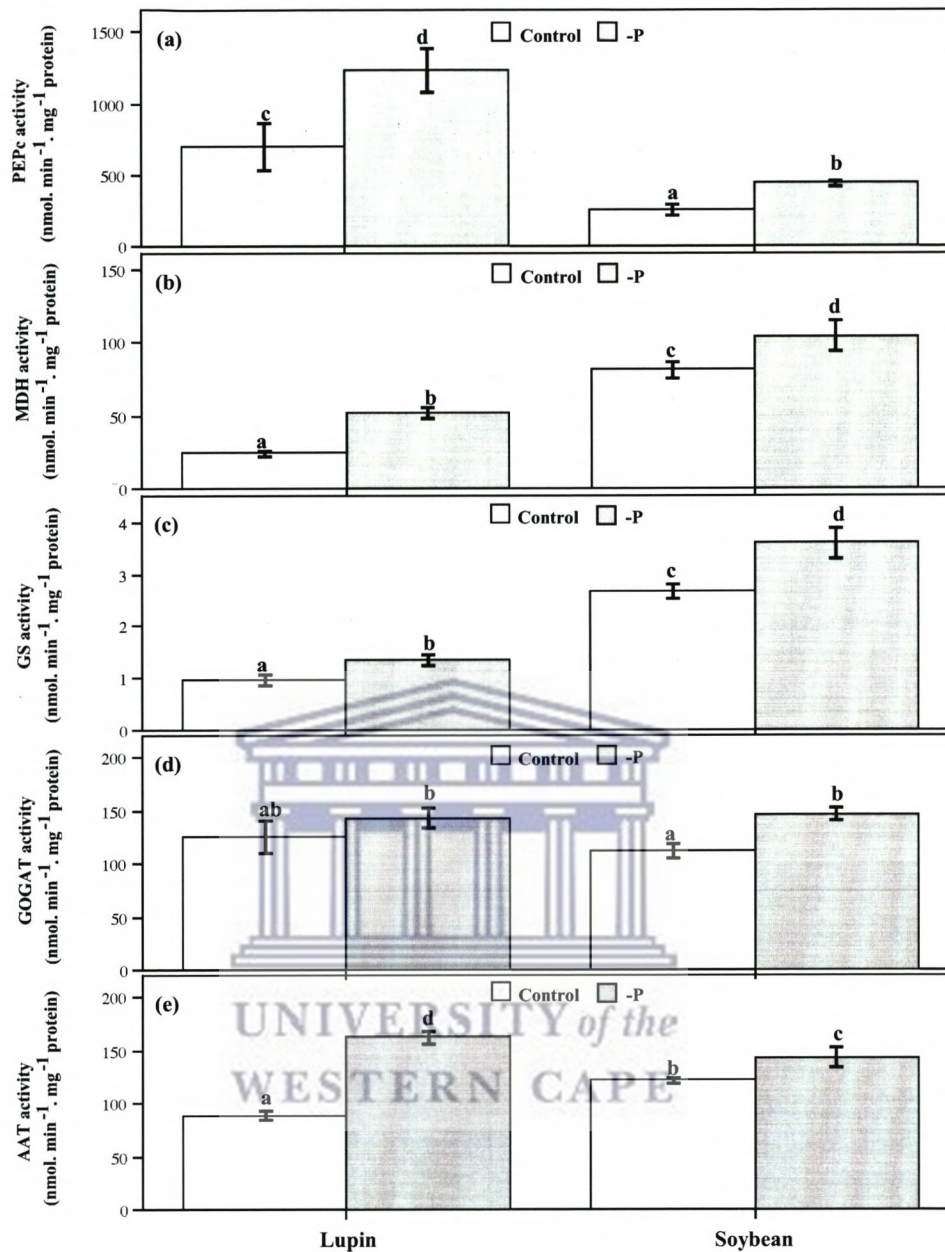
**Figure 5.** (a) Shoot N, (b) Root N, and (c) Nodule N concentrations of lupin (*Lupinus angustifolius*) and soybean (*Glycine max.*). All plants were grown 3 weeks in hydroponic culture with N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub>. A low P condition was induced for 14 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2  $\mu$ M P (-P). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (Control) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

Furthermore, the ratio of N between roots and shoots was unaffected by P starvation in lupins, but in soybeans the root N: shoot N ratio declined (Table 1).

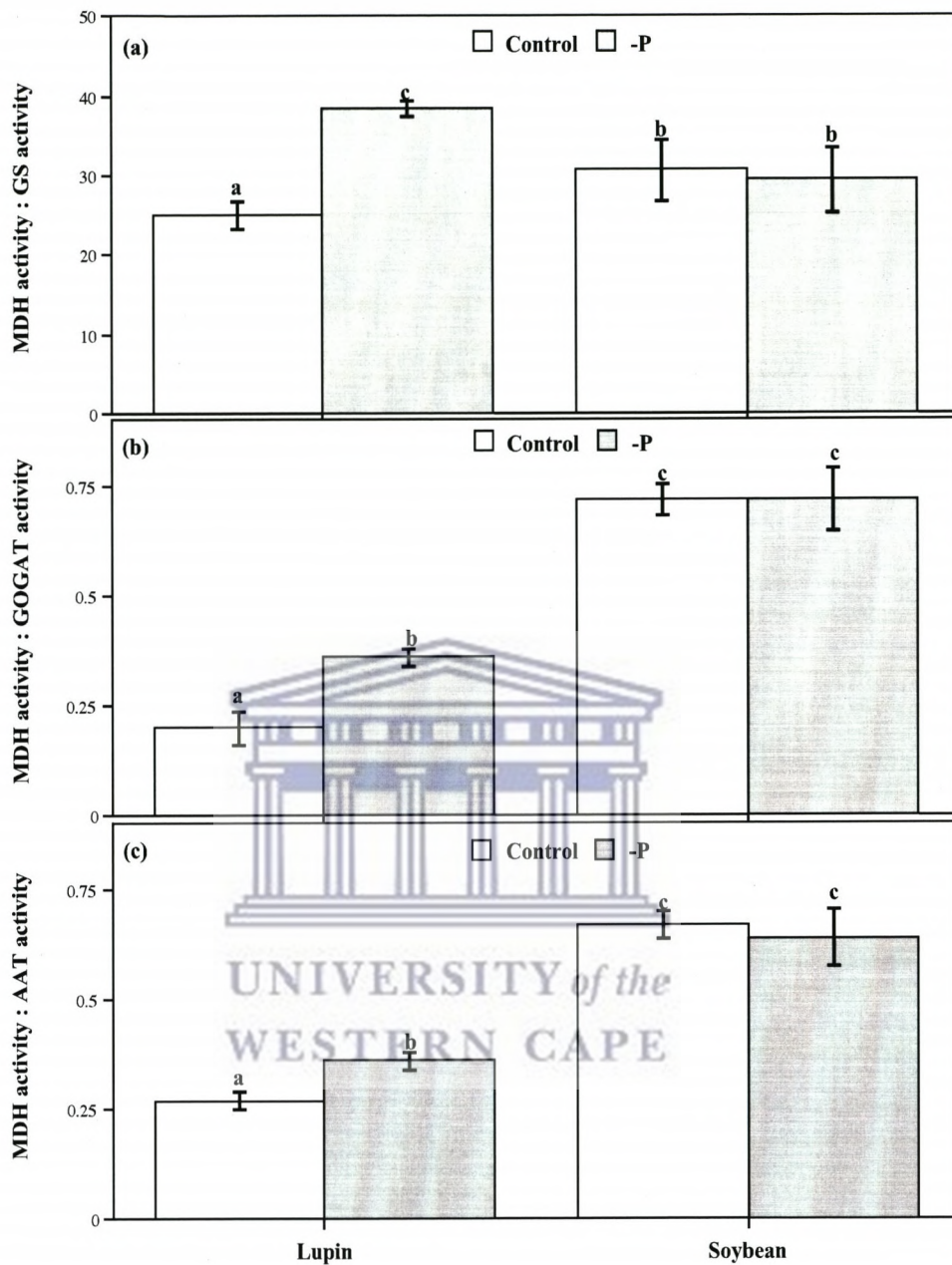
The activities of the enzymes associated with organic acid synthesis, PEPc (Fig. 6a) and MDH (Fig. 6b) increased for both lupin and soybean nodules under P starvation. In addition, there were generally also increases in the amino acid synthesizing enzyme, GS (Fig. 6c), GOGAT (Fig. 6d) and AAT (Fig. 6e), with P starvation in both lupin (except for unchanged GOGAT activity) and soybean nodules. In spite of these increases in both organic acid and amino acid synthesizing enzymes, the ratio of the major organic acid synthesizing enzyme, MDH to the amino acid synthesizing enzymes, was enhanced in lupins, but not in soybeans (Fig. 7a,b,c).







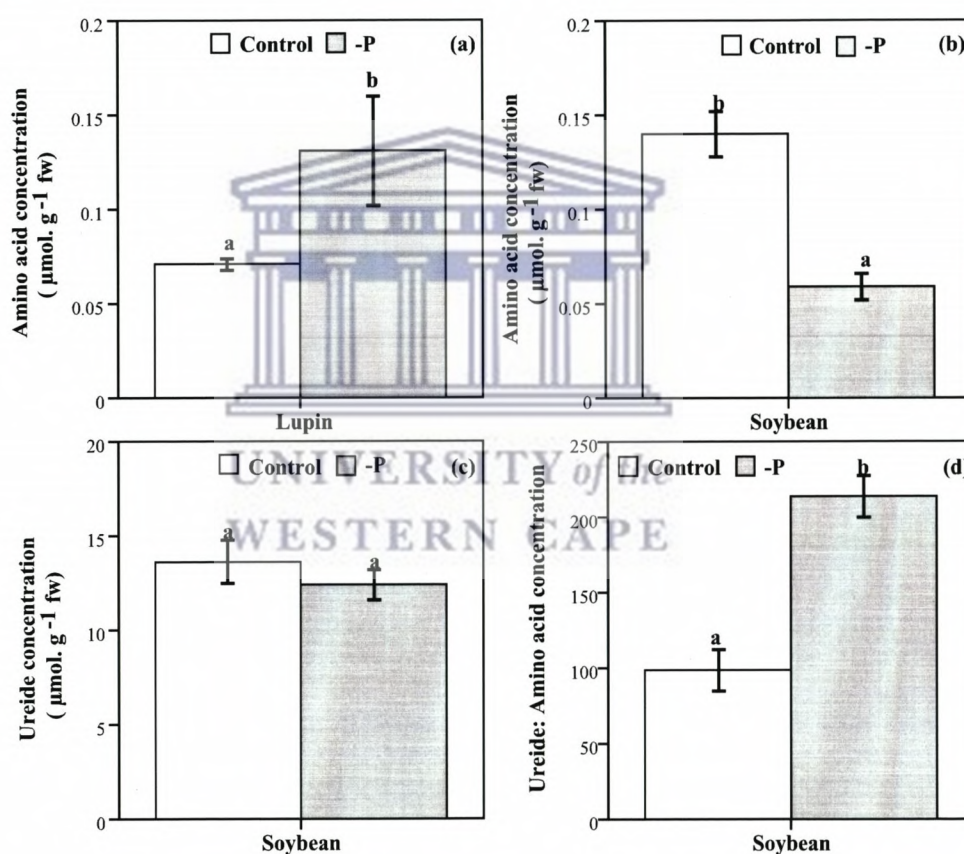
**Figure 6.** *In vitro* specific activities of (a) PEPc, (b) MDH, (c) GS, (d) GOGAT, and (e) AAT of lupin (*Lupinus angustifolius*) and soybean (*Glycine max.*). All plants were grown 3 weeks in hydroponic culture with N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub>. A low P condition was induced for 14 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2 μM P (-P). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (Control) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).



**Figure 7.** The relative ratios of *in vitro* specific activities of (a) MDH to GS, (b) MDH to GOGAT, and (c) MDH to AAT of lupin (*Lupinus angustifolius*) and soybean (*Glycine max.*). All plants were grown 3 weeks in hydroponic culture with N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub>. A low P condition was induced for 14 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2 μM P (-P). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (Control) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).



These increased activities of amino acid synthesizing enzymes during nodular P deficiency, were associated with the enhanced concentrations of nodular amino acid levels in lupins (Fig. 8a), but not in soybeans (Fig. 8b). The maintenance of the nodule ureide concentrations in soybeans under P starvation appeared to have been at the expense of amino acid levels in soybean nodules (Fig. 8c). This accounted for the increase in the ratio of ureides: amino acids concentrations in soybean nodules during P deficiency (Fig. 8d).



**Figure 8.** The nodular amino acid concentrations of (a) *Lupinus angustifolius* (b) *Glycine max*, (c) nodular ureide concentrations of *Glycine max*, and (d) nodular ureide:amino acid ratio of *Glycine max*. All plants were grown 3 weeks in hydroponic culture with N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub>. A low P condition was induced for 14 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2 μM P (-P). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (Control) supply. Values are presented as means (n = 4). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment (P ≤ 0.05).

### 3.5 Discussion

During short-term P starvation, the lupins were physiologically better adapted for maintaining biological N<sub>2</sub> fixation (BNF) than the soybeans. The maintenance of metabolic P<sub>i</sub> (Fig. 1b) and PP<sub>i</sub> (Fig. 1c) concentrations in nodules of both legumes under P starvation, suggest that nodules function optimally at these P levels (Tang *et al.*, 2001; Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002; Colebatch *et al.*, 2004; Le Roux *et al.*, 2006). Lupins showed a lower decline (35%) in nodular total P concentration (Fig. 1a) than the soybeans (64%) and this may be related to lupin nodules being more efficient at P recycling and having a greater sink strength during P starvation. Nodules are known to have a strong sink capacity for P incorporation during P starvation (Israel, 1987; Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002).

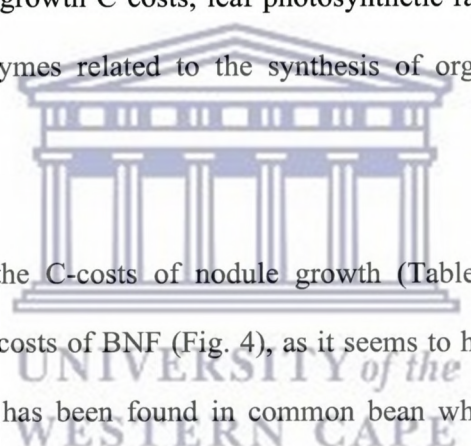
Although soybeans had fewer nodules per plant than lupins (Table 1), the soybean nodules had a greater efficiency to utilise P for growth under limiting P conditions (Fig. 2a,b). This increase in P utilisation efficiency of soybean nodules may be compensating for the relatively, more pronounced decline in the total P concentration of soybean nodules, compared with lupin nodules (Fig. 1a). The enhanced nodule P utilization efficiency is considered to be a pivotal coping strategy during P starvation (Vadéz *et al.*, 1999). The alteration in biomass allocation is another strategy for coping with P starvation (Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002; Le Roux *et al.* 2006).

The maintenance of nodule and shoot growth for both lupins and soybeans appeared to have been at the expense of root growth (Table 1). Such



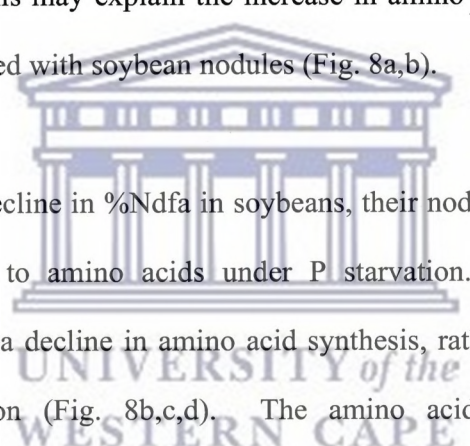
adaptations in legumes have been reported previously, e.g. where growth of nodules was less affected than the growth of other plant organs such as roots after abrupt P withdrawal in white clover plants (Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002).

The %N derived from atmosphere (%Ndfa) in lupins and soybeans may have been directly affected by a limitation in P supply during P starvation, or indirectly by means of other physiological responses. During P starvation, the unchanged %Ndfa in lupins compared with the decline in %Ndfa in soybean (Fig. 4), may be related to lupins having a lower decline in total nodular P, compared with soybean. However, the P starved lupins were also able to maintain nodule growth C costs, leaf photosynthetic rates and to increase the activities of enzymes related to the synthesis of organic acids, relative to amino acids.



In this regard, the C-costs of nodule growth (Table 1) in lupins did not compete with C costs of BNF (Fig. 4), as it seems to have been the case with soybeans. This has been found in common bean where C costs associated with growth were able to compete for C with BNF (Mortimer *et al.* 2008). Furthermore, the unchanged shoot and root N (Fig. 5a,b) concentrations and the constant root N: shoot N concentrations of lupins under P starvation (Table 1), may have underpinned the sustained photosynthetic rates (Fig. 3). By maintaining shoot N allocation relative to the roots N under P starvation, it is likely that the sustained photosynthetic rates in lupins were able to provide C to the nodules for BNF.

Although both lupins and soybean had an increase in nodular organic acid and amino acid synthesizing enzymes under P starvation (Fig. 6), only lupin nodules showed a shift of increasing the activities of the major organic acid synthesizing enzyme MDH, relative to amino acid synthesizing enzymes (Fig. 7) during P starvation. This shift in lupin nodules during P starvation may have provided more organic acids in the form of malate for the maintenance of bacterial metabolism and the synthesis of certain amino acids. This concurs with previous work (Le Roux *et al.* 2006) where a shift towards organic acid metabolism specifically malate, occurred in lupin nodules under P starvation. This may explain the increase in amino acid synthesis of lupin nodules, compared with soybean nodules (Fig. 8a,b).



In spite of the decline in %Ndfa in soybeans, their nodules accumulated more ureides relative to amino acids under P starvation. This was primarily achieved due to a decline in amino acid synthesis, rather than an increase in ureide production (Fig. 8b,c,d). The amino acid (lupins) and ureide (soybeans) exporting legumes represent an unusual metabolic complexity among plant systems (Streeter, 1991). In addition, it has also been suggested that different regulatory principles might have to be adopted for amino acid exporting and ureide exporting legumes (Schulze, 2004) and some of these may be of importance to P starvation adaptation. At this stage it is not possible to conclude whether one strategy for N assimilation is more cost effective than the other because this needs to be substantiated by more comprehensive comparative analyses (Smith & Atkins, 2002). Furthermore,



lupins and soybeans also differ in other means, such as being of temperate and tropical origin and having determinate and indeterminate types of nodules.

In conclusion, the ability of lupins to maintain BNF under short-term P starvation compared with soybean, may be related to a variety of differences between the species. The data from the current study show that lupins have more physiological alteration than soybean during P starvation, which include the changes in nitrogen and carbon metabolism and showing a relatively lower decline in total P concentration of nodules. Although the findings are based on two weeks of P starvation, they represent the adaptations to short-term P stress.



### 3.6 References

Al-Niemi TS, Kahn ML, McDermott TR (1997) Phosphorus metabolism in the *Rhizobium tropici*-bean symbiosis. *Plant Physiology* 113: 1233-1242.

Al-Niemi TS, Kahn ML, McDermott TR (1998) Phosphorus uptake by bean nodules. *Plant and Soil* 198: 71-78.

Boddey RM, Oliveira OC, Alves BJR, Urquiaga S (1995) Field application of the  $^{15}\text{N}$  isotope dilution technique for the reliable quantification of plant-associated biological nitrogen fixation. *Fertilizer Research* 42: 77-87.

Colebatch G, Desbrosses G, Ott T, Krusell L, Montanari O, Kloska S, Kopka J, Udvardi M (2004) Global changes in transcription orchestrate metabolic differentiation during symbiotic nitrogen fixation in *Lotus japonicus*. *Plant Journal* 39: 487-512.

Drevon J-J, Hartwig UA (1997) Phosphorus deficiency increases the argon-induced decline of nodule nitrogenase activity in soybean and alfalfa. *Planta* 201: 463-469.

Hewitt EJ (1966) *Sand and water culture Methods Used in the Study of Plant Nutrition*, 2nd Revised Edition. Technical Communication No. 22 Commonwealth Agricultural Bureau, Farnham Royal, UK. Pp 431-432.



Høgh-Jensen H, Schjoerring JK, Soussana J-F (2002) The influence of phosphorus deficiency on growth and nitrogen fixation of white clover plants. *Annals of Botany* 90: 745-753.

Israel DW (1987) Investigation of the role of phosphorus in symbiotic dinitrogen fixation. *Plant Physiology* 84: 835-840.

Jakobsen I (1985) The role of phosphorus in nitrogen fixation by young pea plants (*Pisum sativum*). *Physiologia Plantarum* 64: 190-196.

Le Roux MR, Ward CL, Botha FC, Valentine AJ (2006) The route of pyruvate synthesis under P<sub>i</sub> starvation in legume root systems. *New Phytologist* 169: 399-408.

Mengel K (1994) Symbiotic dinitrogen fixation – its dependence on plant nutrition and its ecophysiological impact. *Zeitschrift für Pflanzenernährung und Bodenkunde* 157: 233–241.

Mortimer PE, Archer E, Valentine AJ (2005) Mycorrhizal C costs and nutritional benefits in developing grapevines. *Mycorrhiza* 15: 159–165.

Mortimer PE, Pérez-Fernández MA, Valentine AJ (2008) The role of arbuscular mycorrhizal colonization in the carbon and nutrient economy of the tripartite symbiosis with nodulated *Phaseolus vulgaris*. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry* 40: 1019-1027.

Mustroph A, Albrecht G, Hajirezaei M, Grimm B, Biemelt S (2005) Low levels of pyrophosphate in transgenic potato plants expressing *E. coli* pyrophosphatase lead to decreased vitality under oxygen deficiency. *Annals of Botany* 96: 717-726.

Ocaña A, Del Pilar Cordovilla M, Ligeró F, Lluch C (1996) Phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase in root nodules of *Vicia faba*: partial purification and properties. *Physiologia Plantarum* 97: 724-730.

Olivera M, Tejera N, Iribarne C, Ocaña A, Lluch C (2004) Growth, nitrogen fixation and ammonium assimilation in common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*): effect of phosphorus. *Physiologia Plantarum* 121: 498-505.

Peng S, Eissenstat DM, Graham JH, Williams K, Hodge NC (1993) Growth depression in mycorrhizal citrus at high-phosphorus supply. *Plant Physiology* 101: 1063-1071.

Ribet J, Drevon J-J (1995) Increase in permeability to oxygen and in oxygen uptake of soybean nodules under limiting phosphorus nutrition. *Physiologia Plantarum* 94: 298-304.

Rosen H (1957) A modified ninhydrin colorimetric analysis for amino acids. *Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics* 67: 10-15.



Rychter AM, Mikulska M (1990) The relationship between phosphate status and cyanide-resistant respiration in bean roots. *Physiologia Plantarum* 79: 663-667.

Trijbels F, Vogel GD (1966) Degradation of allantoin by *Pseudomonas acidovorans*. *Biochemica et Biophysica Acta* 113: 292-301.

Sa T-M, Israel DW (1991) Energy status and functioning of phosphorus-deficient soybean nodules. *Plant Physiology* 97: 928-935.

Schulze J (2004) How are nitrogen fixation rates regulated in legumes? *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science* 167: 125-137.

Shearer GB, Kohl DH (1986) N<sub>2</sub> fixation in field settings: estimations based on natural <sup>15</sup>N abundance. *Australian Journal of Plant Physiology* 13: 699 – 756.

Smith PMC, Atkins CA (2002) Purine biosynthesis. Big in cell division, even bigger in nitrogen metabolism. *Plant Physiology* 128: 793-802.

Streeter JG (1991) Transport and metabolism of carbon and nitrogen in legume nodules. *Advances in Botanical Research* 18: 129-187.

Tang C, Hinsinger P, Drevon JJ, Jaillard B (2001) Phosphorus deficiency impairs early nodule functioning and enhances proton release in roots of *Medicago truncatula* L. *Annals of Botany* 88: 131-138.

Vance CP (1998) Nodule carbon metabolism: organic acids for N<sub>2</sub> fixation. In: Elmerich C, Kondorosi A, Newton W, eds. *Biological nitrogen fixation for the 21st century*. Dordrecht: Kluwer, pp. 443-448.

Zar JH (1999) *Biostatistical Analysis*. 4th edition, Prentice-Hall, Upper Saddle River, New Jersey, USA.





# CHAPTER 4



**Detection of novel cytosolic malate  
dehydrogenases (cMDH) in *Lupinus*  
WESTERN CAPE  
*angustifolius***

#### 4.1 Abstract

Malate, synthesised via malate dehydrogenase (MDH, EC 1.1.1.37), accumulates in root nodules under P deficiency. Cytosolic- and nodule-enhanced MDH (cMDH and neMDH, respectively) form the bulk of MDH activity observed in root nodules. The objective of this study was to investigate the role of the cMDH and neMDH isoforms in malate supply under P deficiency. Nodulated lupins (*Lupinus angustifolius* var. Tanjil) were hydroponically grown at adequate P (+P) or low P (-P). Malate metabolism and its impact on physiological processes in nodules and how these are regulated on a genetic level were assessed. Total P concentration in nodules decreased under P deficiency, which coincided with an increase in total MDH activity and a subsequent increase in malate concentration. Here, no measurable neMDH presence could be detected by PCR. In contrast, gene-specific primers detected two 1 kb amplicons of cMDH, designated MDH1 (corresponding to +P) and MDH2 (corresponding to -P), respectively. Sequencing analyses of these cMDH amplicons showed them to be 96% identical on an amino acid level. There was a high degree of diversification between proteins detected in this study and other known MDH proteins, particularly those from other leguminous plants.

*Keywords:* MDH, isoforms, P deficiency, cytosolic, nodules



## 4.2 Introduction

There is widespread consensus that malate is the preferred carbon (C) source for bacteroids in almost all legume-*Rhizobium* symbioses studied to date (Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990; Driscoll & Finan, 1993; Schulze *et al.*, 2002). The high apparent flux of malate in root nodules is the result of active synthesis *via* malate dehydrogenase (MDH). This enzyme catalyses the reversible reduction of oxaloacetate (OAA) to malate. In root nodules, though, the kinetics of the reaction suggest that this reaction is favored in the forward direction towards malate synthesis (Miller *et al.*, 1998). This may further depend on the physiological state of the cell and the subcellular location of the enzyme within the cell (Schulze *et al.*, 2002). Nodule MDH has to maintain a fine balance between malate as respiratory source and optimal functioning of bacteroids and malate for conversion to oxaloacetic acid (OAA) and subsequent use in N assimilation.

Numerous earlier immunological and biochemical studies have detected novel forms of the MDH enzyme (Appels & Haaker, 1988; Ratajczak *et al.*, 1989), but it was only much later that several of these forms were isolated and characterized (Miller *et al.*, 1998). This is highly indicative of the importance of the enzyme in several metabolic pathways (Schulze *et al.*, 2002). Of special interest in root nodules is the isolation of an unique nodular enhanced MDH (neMDH) isoform, which was shown to account for up to 50% of the total MDH activity in root nodules of alfalfa but the sub-cellular location of which has yet to be determined (Miller *et al.*, 1998). Conversely, approximately 20% of the MDH activity is found in the cytosolic fraction of

root nodules (Miller *et al.*, 1998). The lower cMDH activity in root nodules may be as a result of the microaerobic conditions, which impede complete oxidative phosphorylation of more complex C substrates as one progresses to the inner core of the nodule (Kaur & Singh, 1999; Cabrerizo *et al.*, 2001).

Recently, it was proposed that C provision to bacteroids in root nodules is acquired through eloquent manipulation of the surrounding host cell cytoplasmic  $P_i$  concentration (Colebatch *et al.*, 2004). This model (Colebatch *et al.*, 2004) notes the tendency of bacteroids in root nodules actively to scavenge  $P_i$ , probably through the excretion of acid phosphatases (APs), from the surrounding plant cell fraction (Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998). High levels of APs have been shown even under conditions of apparent P sufficiency, which suggests that bacteroids, in addition to functioning optimally at low  $O_2$  levels, also operate within narrow limits of  $P_i$  concentration (Sa & Israel, 1991; Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998). Nevertheless, in so doing bacteroids induce the alternative pathway via the concerted action of the non-phosphorylating enzyme reactions phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase (PEPc) and MDH to metabolize PEP in the plant cell fraction (Colebatch *et al.*, 2004). Implicit to this model would be the extent to which nodules acquire such high malate levels. Secondly, the sink strength of nodules for P can also be inferred from this, which would explain why nodules are almost always unaffected by even very acute P deficiencies of host root. Nodules consistently maintain higher P levels than either root or shoots under P deficiency (Israel, 1993; Sa & Israel, 1991; Tang *et al.*, 2001). MDH activity of the crude extract has been



induced under P deficient conditions in lupins and soybean (Le Roux *et al.*, 2006, 2009; Schulze *et al.*, 2006).

The objective of this study was to assess if expression of novel MDH isoforms is induced under P stress conditions in *Lupinus angustifolius*. Subsequently, it was to ascertain how, if at all, these forms were to exist, how they would differ at the genetic level and then to explore any differences in expression patterns under P stressed conditions.

### **4.3 Materials and methods**

#### **4.3.1 Plant material, growth conditions and harvesting**

Seeds of *Lupinus angustifolius* (L. cv. Tanjil) were germinated in vermiculite. At planting seeds were coated with a genus-specific rhizobial inoculum containing *Bradyrhizobium* sp. (*Lupinus*) bacteria (Agricol, Western Cape, South Africa). Seedlings were transferred by 7 to 10 days after planting to an aerated nutrient solution (4 mM CaCl<sub>2</sub>, 1.5 mM MgSO<sub>4</sub>, 2 mM K<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, 2 mM NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>/Na<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub>, 139 µM H<sub>3</sub>BO<sub>3</sub>, 21 µM MnSO<sub>4</sub>, 2 µM ZnSO<sub>4</sub>, 3 µM CuSO<sub>4</sub>, 0.2 µM Na<sub>2</sub>MoO<sub>4</sub>, 89 µM FeEDTA and no N). The nutrient solution was changed once a week and the pH adjusted to 5.8 daily by addition of either 1 M HCl or 1 M NaOH. Plants were initially grown in a non-limiting P supply (2 mM P, designated +P) for approximately three weeks, after which half of the plants were switched to a limiting P supply (2 µM P, designated -P). Phosphorus starvation was induced for fourteen days at which time nodule tissues from the +P and -P plants were harvested. Upon excising nodules from adjacent roots, they were frozen in liquid nitrogen and stored at

-80°C until further analysis. Roots were oven-dried to a constant weight at 72°C for 48 h and the dry weights recorded. The dried root material was sent to a commercial laboratory (Bemlab, De Beers Road, Somerset West, South Africa), where it was milled and the P concentrations determined, using inductively coupled mass spectrometry (ICP-MS) with suitable standards. Total P concentration was expressed per root dry weight.

#### 4.3.2 Determination of $\delta^{15}\text{N}$

The  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  analyses were carried out at the Archeometry Department, University of Cape Town. The isotopic ratio of  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  was calculated as  $\delta = 1000\text{‰} [R_{\text{sample}}/R_{\text{standard}}]$ , where R is the molar ratio of the heavier to the lighter isotope of the sample using standards as defined by Farquhar *et al.*, (1989). Oven-dried plant components were milled in a Wiley mill using a 0.5 mm mesh (Arthur H Thomas, California, USA). Samples of approximately 200 mg dried shoot sample were weighed into 8 mm by 5 mm tin capsules (Elemental Microanalysis Ltd., Devon, U.K.) on a Sartorius microbalance (Goettingen, Germany). The samples were then combusted in a Fisons NA 1500 (Series 2) CHN analyser (Fisons Instruments SpA, Milan, Italy). The  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  values for the nitrogen gases released were determined on a Finnigan Matt 252 mass spectrometer (Finnigan MAT GmbH, Bremen, Germany), which was connected to a CHN analyser by a Finnigan MAT Conflo control unit. Three standards were used to correct the samples for machine drift; two in-house standards (Merck Gel and Nasturtium) and one IAEA (International Atomic Energy Agency) standard- $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ .



The  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  natural abundance of the legumes was corrected for the seed N, according to Boddey *et al.*, (1995). The seed corrected  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  values were used to determine the percentage N derived from the atmosphere (%Ndfa) according to Shearer & Kohl (1986):

$$\%Ndfa = 100 \times [(\delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{reference plant}} - \delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{legume}}) / (\delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{reference plant}} - B)]$$

Where  $B$  is the  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  natural abundance of the N derived from biological N fixation of the above-ground tissue of *Lens vulgaris*, grown in a N free culture, according to Shearer & Kohl (1986). The  $B$ -value of *Lens vulgaris* was determined as -0.76‰.

#### 4.3.3 Malate concentration and MDH activity

Malate concentrations and NADH-MDH activities, which equate to cytosolic MDH, were determined in accordance with methods from Le Roux *et al.*, (2006). Roots of plants with nodules still attached were used in feeding experiments. These attached root nodule pieces were submerged in the same nutrient solutions (15 ml) in which plants were grown, but modified to contain 1% sucrose, to compensate for the loss of photosynthate supply via the shoot. The system was aerated with ambient air (360 ppm  $\text{CO}_2$ ) for the duration of the experiment. Root nodule pieces were equilibrated for 5 min, prior to feeding with 10  $\mu\text{l}$  of  $^{14}\text{C}$  label in the form of  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ . After 5 min had elapsed the experiment was stopped by discarding the incubation solution. The various segments were bagged, quenched in liquid  $\text{N}_2$  and stored at  $-80^\circ\text{C}$ . Components were homogenised with 80% (v/v) ethanol and separated into

soluble and insoluble components. The soluble component was subsequently separated into chloroform-soluble and water-soluble components, of which the latter was fractionated into amino acid, organic acid, and carbohydrate fractions, as described by Atkins & Canvin (1971).

High performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) separations were made isocratically on a 30 × 0.78 cm Bio-Rad Aminex Ion Exclusion HPX-87H organic acid column. HPLC analysis was carried out on an Alliance 2690 Separations Module equipped with a 996 Photodiode array detector (Waters). The mobile phase consisted of 30 mM H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> at a flow rate of 0.6 ml.min<sup>-1</sup>. Eluting peaks were detected by ultraviolet absorption at 247 nm and at a column temperature of 50°C. The system was calibrated with known standards (0-100 mM of Malate) for quantification and determination of retention time, and was co-chromatographed with the sample for identification. Data analysis was done using Millenium<sup>32</sup> Chromatography software (Waters). In addition the organic acid fractions of interest were manually collected for the determination of radioactivity in the specific organic acid, i.e. malate. Radioactivity measurements were made on a liquid scintillation counter.

Malate dehydrogenase was assayed as described by Appels and Haaker (1988). Blank reactions were set up beside actual MDH determination assays and comprised of a reaction medium without OAA. The reaction was initiated by adding 30 µl crude extract to the reaction mixture in a total volume of



250  $\mu$ l. Initial reaction rates have been shown to be proportional to the concentration of enzyme under the conditions used. The activity of MDH activity was expressed per fresh mass of nodule.

#### **4.3.4 RNA isolation**

Nodules were homogenized in liquid nitrogen using pre-chilled mortars and pestles and total RNA extracted with 1 ml of Trizol reagent per 100 mg nodule tissue. The homogenate was incubated at room temperature for three to five minutes. Thereafter, 200  $\mu$ l of chloroform was added to the homogenate, which was inverted carefully to emulsify and incubated for a further two to three minutes at room temperature. This was centrifuged at  $\geq 16\ 000$  g for 20 min and the resulting supernatant was carefully transferred to a new tube to which equal volumes of 75% cold ethanol were then added. The homogenate was mixed with a pipette and subsequently transferred to an RNeasy spin column (Qiagen, Hilden, Germany), attached to a collection tube. The RNA was purified in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and afterwards resuspended in 30  $\mu$ l water. The eluate was aliquoted in 4  $\mu$ l volumes and stored at  $-80^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

#### **4.3.5 Semi-quantitative reverse transcription (RT)-PCR**

Total RNA extracted was reverse transcribed using an ImprompII Reverse Transcription (RT) system provided by Promega (Madison, WI, USA). Degenerate primers were designed to hybridize with conserved regions of cMDH using multiple alignments (CLUSTAL X, version 1.81) of various nucleotide sequences of other legumes identified from the genetic database,

National Center for Biotechnology Information (NCBI; Altschul *et al.*, 1997). A 36-mer gene-specific forward primer (*cMDHFw*) (ATAC**GCGATCGCC**ATGGCCAAAGACCCAGTTCGTGT) and a 33-mer gene-specific reverse primer (*cMDHRev*) for cMDH (GTGC**GTTTAAAC**CCTAAGAGAGGCAAGAGTGAGC) were compiled. Primers were designed to include sites for two restriction enzymes (Sgf I at the 5'-end and Pme I at the 3'-end; *in bold and underlined*). Attempts to detect neMDH with various gene-specific primer sets in the same extract were unsuccessful and subsequently abandoned.

Reverse transcription-PCR for the synthesis of cDNA included 1 µl of the reverse primer (10 µM) to which 4 µl of RNA was added. Magnesium concentration was optimized for +P treatment at 4 mM (3.2 µl MgCl<sub>2</sub> in a final volume of 20 µl) and for -P treatment at 8 mM (6.4 µl MgCl<sub>2</sub> in a final volume of 20 µl). The water was adjusted accordingly, that is 5.3 µl and 2.1 µl of nuclease-free H<sub>2</sub>O for +P and -P, respectively. Each reaction contained 5 µl RNA, 4.0 µl ImprompII buffer, 1.0 µl dNTPs, 0.5 µl RNasin and 1.0 µl RT. Reactions were done as follow: reverse transcription at 25°C for 5 min, 42°C for 60 min and 70°C for 15 min.

The cDNA was subsequently amplified in a polymerase chain reaction (PCR) performed with Promega's Flexi GoTaq DNA Polymerase in the buffer supplied and a final volume of 50 µl. The degenerate primers (5 µl each) were used at a final concentration of 10 µM in PCR reactions. Nucleotides (dNTPs, 1 µl) were added to final concentrations of 0.2 mM. The PCR reaction was



started by adding GoTaq DNA polymerase enzyme in the assay at a final concentration of 1.25 U. The PCR program was 94°C for 2 min, 1 cycle, 95°C for 20 sec, 65°C for 30 sec, 72°C for 90 sec and 35 cycles and a final extension of 72°C for 5 min, 1 cycle. Products from the RT-PCR were separated by 0.8% (w/v) agarose gel electrophoresis.

#### 4.3.6 DNA sequencing and cloning

Sequencing of the purified PCR product (Wizard, Promega, Madison, WI, USA) was conducted using the custom designed primers. The cMDH cDNA of both +P and -P inserts from positive clones were cloned into *pGEM-T* Easy vector (Promega Corporation, Madison, WI, USA) and transformed into JM109 *Escherichia coli* cells. Prior to plating transformed cells, LB agar plates were supplemented with 50 µl of a 100 mg/ml Ampicillin (AMP<sup>+</sup>) solution, 40 µl of a 2% X-Gal solution and 7 µl of a 20% IPTG solution. All the reagents were freshly made on the day. Transformed cells were plated and left overnight (16-24 h) at 37°C. A single white colony was picked from LB agar plates and inoculated into 5 ml LB broth, containing 1 µl/1 ml AMP<sup>+</sup>, overnight at 37°C. Plasmid DNA was purified using the PureYield plasmid miniprep system from Promega (Promega Corporation, Madison, WI, USA). About 3 ml of bacterial cells were pelleted for 30 sec at maximum speed. The supernatant was discarded and the pellet resuspended in 600 µl of TE (Tris-EDTA) buffer. One hundred microlitres of cell lysis buffer was added to the resuspended pellet and the tube was inverted six times to mix its contents. At this stage a pre-chilled neutralization solution was added to the mixture and again inverted to mix thoroughly. Cell debris was subsequently pelleted at

maximum speed and approximately 900 µl of the supernatant resulting from this was carefully transferred to a PureYield minicolumn to which a collection tube was attached and then centrifuged. This was followed by a wash step whereby 200 µl of endotoxin removal wash was added to the minicolumn, followed by a second wash with 400 µl column wash solution. Finally, the DNA was eluted from the column with 30 µl of elution buffer and stored at -20°C for further analysis.

After digestion of 10 µl of DNA with 1 µl of *EcoR*I, the resulting fragments were separated by agarose gel electrophoresis. At least two independent clones, for each treatment were identified. DNA sequencing of all isolated clones was done at Inqababiotech (Pretoria, RSA) and the sequences of the full-length clones were corroborated with those sequences previously obtained from partial clones [Central Analytical Facility (CAF), Stellenbosch, RSA]. The nucleotide sequences of the complete open reading frames (ORFs) were deposited in GENBANK, for *LangMDH1* (corresponding to +P) and *LangMDH2* (corresponding to -P) (*accession numbers were not available at the time this manuscript went to print*).

#### **4.3.7 Bioinformatics and statistical analysis**

Similarity searches were performed using the BLAST program (<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov>). Multiple sequence alignment of *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2* was performed with CLUSTAL X (version 1.81) (Thompson *et al.*, 1994) using default parameters and the Blosum matrix. GENEDOC software (Nicholas & Nicholas, 1997) was used for homology shading of the



aligned nucleotide and/or protein sequences. A phylogenetic tree of cMDHs was constructed using the Neighbour-joining algorithm of CLUSTAL W. The resulting phylogenetic tree was visualized in MEGA 4.1.

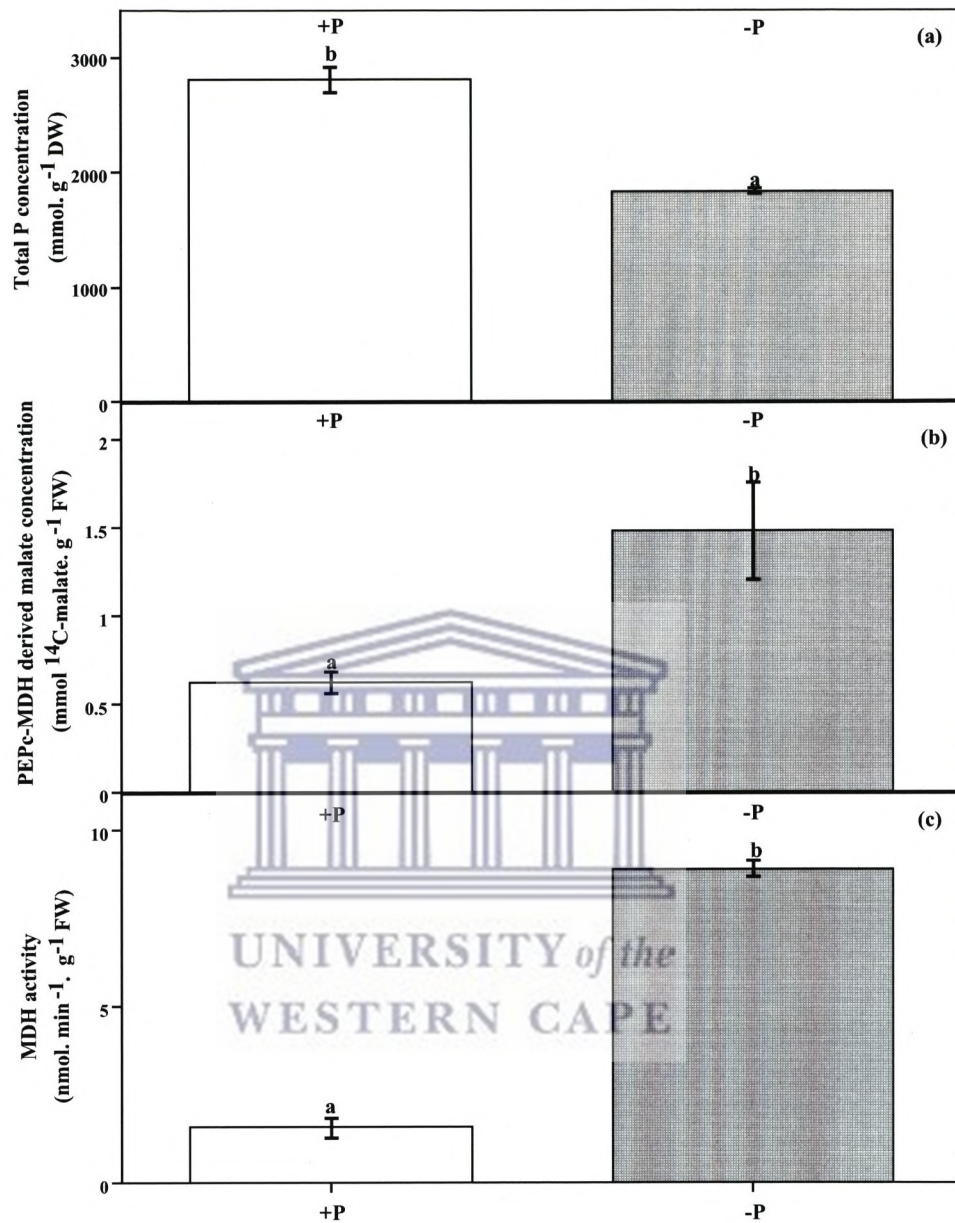
#### **4.4 Results**

##### **4.4.1 *P concentrations and <sup>14</sup>C incorporation***

Phosphorus concentration in nodules of P deficient plants (LP) declined by about 20% compared with P sufficient (HP) controls over the 14 d period (Fig. 1a). In addition, nodules of plants subjected to LP incorporated significantly more <sup>14</sup>CO<sub>2</sub>, which constituted a two-fold increase under LP conditions compared with HP controls (Table 1). This increase was mainly associated with a markedly higher incorporation into the soluble fraction of LP nodules. Most of the incorporated <sup>14</sup>C was recovered in organic acids, which was higher at LP supply than at HP (Table 1). This coincided with increases in nodular malate levels of approximately 60% under the same P deficient conditions (Fig. 1b). Phosphorus deficient conditions also lead to a concomitant 6-fold increase in MDH activity (Fig. 1c).

##### **4.4.2 *Nitrogen fixation***

The nitrogen fixation capacity, expressed as %Ndfa, of root nodules as assessed by the <sup>15</sup>N enrichment procedure was maintained at about 70% for both +P and -P treatments as imposed under the short-term (14 d) P deficient experimental conditions in this study (Table 1). This correlated positively with the unchanged δ<sup>15</sup>N values for plants grown at either HP or LP (Table 1).



**Figure 1:** (a) Total phosphorus concentration ( $\text{mmol. g}^{-1}$  DW); (b) PEPC-derived malate concentration ( $\text{mmol } ^{14}\text{C. g}^{-1}$  FW) and (c) MDH activity ( $\text{nmol. min}^{-1}. \text{g}^{-1}$  FW) in nodules of *Lupinus angustifolius* either sufficiently supplied with P (+P) or deficient in P (-P). Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

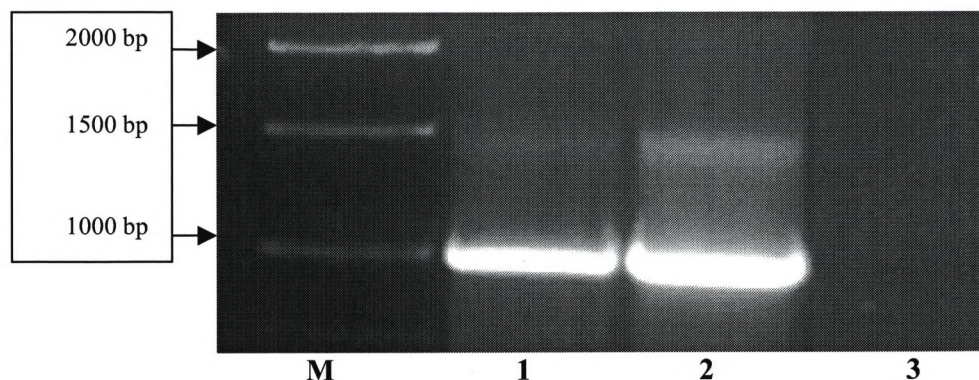


**Table 1.** Percentage nitrogen derived from atmosphere (%Ndfa), and the incorporation and assimilation of dissolved  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  in nodules attached to a piece of root from P sufficient and P deficient *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil) plants after 5 min of  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  labelling.

| Parameters  | Treatments    |               |
|---|---------------|---------------|
|   | +P            | -P            |
| <b>Shoot parameters</b>   |               |               |
| $\delta^{15}\text{N}:\text{}^{14}\text{N}$ ratio                          | -1.36 ± 0.12a | -1.75 ± 0.21a |
| % Ndfa  | 73.09 ± 1.91a | 76.35 ± 3.38a |
| <b><math>^{14}\text{C}</math> concentration (nmol. g<sup>-1</sup> fw)</b> |               |               |
| Soluble fraction  | 2.48 ± 0.14a  | 7.54 ± 2.19b  |
| Insoluble fraction  | 3.41 ± 0.31a  | 2.39 ± 0.97a  |
| Lipid fraction  | 0.05 ± 0.01a  | 0.22 ± 0.03a  |
| Total incorporation   | 5.94 ± 0.49a  | 10.15 ± 1.43b |
| <b><math>^{14}\text{C}</math> fractions of total incorporation (%)</b>    |               |               |
| Organic acids   | 50.52 ± 1.77a | 60.09 ± 3.89b |
| Amino acids   | 27.64 ± 1.05a | 22.96 ± 1.86a |
| Neutral fraction  | 21.85 ± 0.87a | 16.95 ± 2.09a |

#### 4.4.3 Identification of two independent MDH cDNAs

After RT-PCR with degenerate primers, two independent amplicons of approximately 1.0 kb in size of cMDH transcripts (Fig. 2), one each from +P (*LangMDH1*) and -P (*LangMDH2*) root nodules, were cloned into the vector pGEM T-Easy. Sequencing of the identified amplicons showed that the MDH cDNAs of both transcripts were more similar to those reported previously for *Lupinus albus* (GENBANK accession number AF459645.1). Comparative analyses of the deduced nucleotide (nt) sequences from start (ATG) to stop (TGA) of the cMDHs isolated within this study demonstrated that both are highly homologous to *L. albus* cMDH isolated from P-deprived tissue (Uhdstone *et al.*, 2003).



**Figure 2:** Agarose gel electrophoresis of PCR-amplified cDNA inserts performed on total RNA extracted from root nodules. A 1 kb ladder was used as a molecular size marker (**M**) with the sizes indicated in base pairs. The approximate sizes of the hybridization bands are indicated on the left. Lane 1 represents the signal from the isolates extracted from root nodules that served as controls, that is +P, whilst lane 2 shows a hybridization signal as depicted under conditions of P deficiency (-P). Lane 3 is a negative control in which nuclease-free water was substituted as a template.

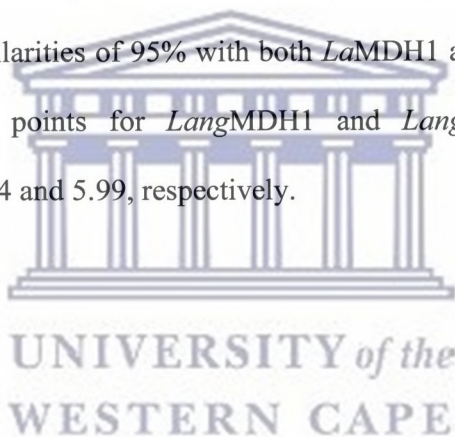
There was a high degree of homology (92%) between the two amplicons based on nucleotide sequence. Single nucleotide polymorphism analysis showed that single nucleotide differences occurred throughout the genes of the two isolates identified within this study (Table 2). The deduced nt-sequence of the *LangMDH1* in this study was 88% similar to previously reported sequences, *LaMDH1* and *LaMDH2* of *L. albus*. Similarly, for *LangMDH2*, nucleotide sequence similarity showed about 94% homology to *LaMDH1* and 91% to *LaMDH2*. Both these latter isoforms were isolated from proteoid roots of plants subjected to P deficiency.



**Table 2.** Single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) between *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2* isolated from *Lupinus angustifolius*. <sup>a</sup>Nucleotide position as from the start codon.

| SNP position <sup>a</sup> | <i>LangMDH1</i> |   |   |   | <i>LangMDH2</i> |   |   |   |
|---------------------------|-----------------|---|---|---|-----------------|---|---|---|
|                           | A               | C | G | T | A               | C | G | T |
| 45                        |                 |   | + |   | +               |   |   |   |
| 54                        | +               |   |   |   |                 |   | + |   |
| 69                        |                 | + |   |   |                 |   | + |   |
| 87                        | +               |   |   |   |                 |   | + |   |
| 96                        | +               |   |   |   |                 |   |   | + |
| 97                        |                 |   |   | + |                 |   | + |   |
| 111                       |                 |   | + |   |                 | + |   |   |
| 192                       |                 | + |   |   |                 |   |   | + |
| 224                       |                 | + |   |   |                 |   |   | + |
| 243                       |                 |   | + |   |                 |   |   | + |
| 259                       | +               |   |   |   |                 |   |   | + |
| 330                       |                 |   |   | + |                 | + |   |   |
| 344                       |                 | + |   |   |                 | + |   |   |
| 396                       |                 |   |   | + |                 | + |   |   |
| 444                       |                 | + |   |   |                 |   |   | + |
| 447                       |                 |   |   | + | +               |   |   |   |
| 480                       |                 |   |   | + |                 |   |   | + |
| 498                       |                 |   |   | + |                 | + |   |   |
| 571                       |                 |   |   | + | +               |   |   |   |
| 587                       |                 |   |   | + |                 | + |   |   |
| 602                       |                 |   |   | + |                 | + |   |   |
| 609                       |                 | + |   |   |                 |   |   | + |
| 615                       | +               |   |   |   |                 |   |   | + |
| 666                       |                 |   | + |   | +               |   |   |   |
| 687                       | +               |   |   |   |                 |   | + |   |
| 753                       |                 |   |   | + |                 | + |   |   |
| 765                       |                 |   |   | + |                 | + |   |   |
| 766                       | +               |   |   |   |                 | + |   |   |
| 771                       |                 |   |   | + |                 | + |   |   |
| 804                       |                 | + |   |   | +               |   |   |   |
| 807                       |                 |   | + |   | +               |   |   |   |
| 816                       |                 |   |   | + | +               |   |   |   |
| 828                       | +               |   |   |   |                 |   |   | + |
| 831                       |                 |   |   | + | +               |   |   |   |
| 835                       | +               |   |   |   |                 |   | + |   |
| 874                       | +               |   |   |   |                 |   | + |   |
| 877-878                   | +               | + |   |   |                 | + | + |   |
| 885                       |                 |   | + |   |                 |   |   | + |
| 910                       |                 |   | + |   |                 | + |   |   |
| 936                       | +               |   |   |   |                 |   | + |   |
| 952                       |                 |   | + |   |                 | + |   |   |
| 957                       | +               |   |   |   |                 |   | + |   |
| 969                       |                 |   | + |   | +               |   |   |   |
| 972                       | +               |   |   |   |                 |   | + |   |
| 978                       |                 |   | + |   | +               |   |   |   |
| 982                       |                 |   |   | + |                 | + |   |   |

Furthermore, sequencing data showed that the *LangMDH1* amplicon with an open reading frame (ORF) of 999 nucleotides (nt) encoded for a predicted protein of 332 amino acids (aa) with a predicted molecular weight of approximately 35.4 kDa (Fig. 3a). The 999-nt ORF of *LangMDH2* encoded for a similar sized protein of 332 amino acids, with a predicted molecular weight of 35.4 kDa (Fig. 3b). Protein sequence alignment of the two isolates identified within this study, *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2*, revealed 96% similarity between them. The *LangMDH1* amplicon shared a higher degree of similarity ( $\approx 98\%$ ) based on aa-sequence to *LaMDH1* of *L. albus*, whereas the degree of similarity to *LaMDH2* was 96%. The *LangMDH2* amplicon shared equal similarities of 95% with both *LaMDH1* and *LaMDH2* (Table 3). The iso-electric points for *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2* proteins were established at 5.64 and 5.99, respectively.





(a) *LangMDH1*

**accgctctcaggagatcttccgtaaggctcgacctgcaggcggccggaattcactagtgattc**  
**gcgtcgcc**ATG GCC AAA GAC CCA GTT CGT GTT CTT GTC ACT GGT GCT GCA  
M A K D P V R V L V T G A A  
GGG CAA ATC GGA TAT GCT CTT GTC CCC ATG ATT GCT AGG GGA GTA ATG  
G Q I G Y A L V P M I A R G V M  
CTG GGA TCT GAC CAG CCC GTG ATC CTC CAC TTG CTT GAC ATT CCA CCT  
L G S D Q P V I L H L L D I P P  
GCA GCA GAG TCA CTG AAT GGT GTT AAA ATG GAG TTG GTG GAT GCT GCA  
A A E S L N G V K M E L V D A A  
TTC CCC CTT CTT AAA GGT GTT GTT GCT ACA ACT GAT GCG GTT GAG GCA  
F P L L K G V V A T T D A V E A  
TGC ACT GGG GTC AAT ATT GCT GTA ATG GTT GGT GGA TTC CCT AGA AAA  
C T G V N I A V M V G G F P R K  
GAA GGT ATG GAG AGG AAA GAT GTG ATG TCT AAA AAT GTC TCT ATT TAT  
E G M E R K D V M S K N V S I Y  
AAG TCC CAG GCT TCT GCT CTT GAA AAG CAT GCT GCT GCT AAC TGC AAG  
K S Q A S A L E K H A A A N C K  
GTT CTG GTT GTT GCT AAT CCA GCA AAC ACC AAT GCA TTG ATC CTG AAG  
V L V V A N P A N T N A L I L K  
GAA TTT GCT CCA TCT ATC CCT GAG AAA AAC ATT TCT TGT TTG ACT AGA  
E F A P S I P E K N I S C L T R  
CTG GAT CAT AAC AGG GCA CTG GGT CAA ATT TCT GAA AGA CTG AAC GTT  
L D H N R A L G Q I S E R L N V  
CAA GTT TCT GAT GTA AAA AAT GTT ATA ATC TGG GGT AAC CAT TCA TCA  
Q V S D V K N V I I W G N H S S  
TCT CAG TAT CCT GAT GTC AAC CAT GCA ACT GTT ACA ACC CCA GCA GGG  
S Q Y P D V N H A T V T T P A G  
GAA AAG CCT GTC CGT GAA CTT GTT GCT GAT GAT GCC TGG TTG AAT TCG  
E K P V R E L V A D D A W L N S  
GAA TTC ATA GCT ACT GTC CAA CAA CGT GGT GCT GCA ATT ATT AAA GCT  
E F I A T V Q T R G A A I I K A  
AGA AAG CTT TCA AGT GCA CTA TCT GCT GCT AGT GCT GCT TGT GAC CAC  
R K L S S A L S A A S A A C D H  
ATT AGA GAT TGG GTT CTT GGA ACT CCT GAG GGC ACC TGG GTC TCG ATG  
I R D W V L G T P E G T W V S M  
GGA GTT TAT TCT GAT GGA TCT TAC AAT GTA CCA GCT GGA CTG ATC TAT  
G V Y S D G S Y N V P A G L I Y  
TCA TTC CCT GTC ACC ACT CAG AAT GGG GAA TGG AAA ATA GTT CAA GGA  
S F P V T T Q N G E W K I V Q G  
CTT GCA ATT GAT GAG TTC TCA AGG AAA AAA TTG GAC TTG ACA GCA GAA  
L A I D E F S R K K L D L T A E  
GAA CTT TCT GAG GAG AAA GCT TTG GCT TAC TCA TGC CTC TCT TAG **tac**  
E L S E E K A L A Y S C L S \*

**gacgatggmatcscargcasccatgtcgtgctgyagctagctgaygctgsagcmaawtccgc**  
**stattgrccgggtctcmgtawtsaatktkcycg**

**Figure 3 (a)** Nucleotide sequence of the cDNA encoding the *Lupinus angustifolius* cytosolic MDH (denoted *LangMDH1*) of +P treatments. The catalytic active site is underlined ( ). The deduced amino acid sequence is denoted below the nucleotide sequence in the standard one-letter code. The translation stop codon is designated with an asterik (\*).

(b) *LangMDH2*

```
aaccmagctccgcccgcacatggcggcgcgggaattcgattacgatcgcc ATG GCC AAA
                                     M A K
GAC CCA GTT CGT GTT CTT GTC ACT GGT GCT GCA GGA CAA ATC GGG TAT
D P V R V L V T G A A G Q I G Y
GCT CTT GTC CCG ATG ATT GCT AGG GGA GTG ATG CTG GGT GCT GAC CAG
A L V P M I A R G V M L G A D Q
CCC GTC ATC CTC CAC TTG CTT GAC ATT CCA CCT GCA GCA GAG TCA CTG
P V I L H L L D I P P A A E S L
AAT GGT GTT AAA ATG GAG TTG GTG GAT GCT GCA TTC CCT CTT CTT AAA
N G V K M E L V D A A F P L L K
GGT GTT GTT GCT ACA ACT GAT GTG GTT GAG GCA TGC ACT GGT GTC AAT
G V T A T T D V V E A C T G V N
ATT GCT GTA TTG GTT GGT GGA TTC CCT AGA AAA GAA GGT ATG GAG AGG
I A V L V G G F P R K E G M E R
AAA GAT GTG ATG TCT AAA AAT GTC TCT ATT TAC AAG TCC CAG GCT TCT
K D V M S K N V S I Y K S Q A S
GCT CTT GAA AAG CAT GCT GCT GCT AAC TGC AAG GTT CTG GTT GTT GCT
A L E K H A A A N C K V L V V A
AAC CCA GCA AAC ACC AAT GCA TTG ATC CTG AAG GAA TTT GCT CCA TCT
N P A N T N A L I L K E F A P S
ATT CCA GAG AAA AAC ATT TCT TGT TTG ACT AGA CTG GAT CAT AAC AGG
I P E K N I S C L T R L D H N R
GCA CTG GGC CAA ATT TCT GAA AGA CTG AAC GTT CAA GTT TCT GAT GTA
A L G Q I S E R L N V Q V S D V
AAA AAT GTT ATA ATC TGG GGT AAC CAT TCA TCA ACT CAG TAT CCT GAT
K N V I I W G N H S S T Q Y P D
GCC AAC CAT GCA ACT GCT ACA ACT CCA GCT GGG GAA AAG CCT GTC CGT
A N H A T A T T P A G E K P V R
GAA CTT GTT GCT GAT GAT GCC TGG TTG AAT TCA GAA TTC ATA GCT ACT
E L V A D D A W L N S E F I A T
GTC CAG CAA CGT GGT GCT GCA ATT ATT AAA GCT AGA AAG CTT TCA AGT
V Q Q R G A A I I K A R K L S S
GCA CTA TCT GCT GCT AGT GCT GCC TGT GAC CAC ATC CGA GAC TGG GTT
A L S A A S A A C D H I R D W V
CTT GGA ACT CCT GAG GGC ACC TGG GTA TCA ATG GGA GTA TAT TCT GAT
L G T P E G T W V S M G V Y S D
GGT TCA TAC GAT GTA CCA GCT GGA CTG ATC TAT TCA TTC CCT GTC ACC
G S Y D V P A G L I Y S F P V T
GCT GCC AAT GGT GAA TGG AAA ATA GTT CAA GGA CTT CCA ATT GAT GAG
A A N G E W K I V Q G L P I D E
TTC TCA AGG AAA AAG TTG GAC TTG ACA GCA CAA GAG CTT TCT GAG GAA
F S R K K L D L T A Q E L S E E
AAG GCT TTA GCT CAC TCT TGC CTC TCT TAG tttaagcacattcactagtgaaa
K A L A H S C L S *
```

**ttcgccgcccgcctgcaggtcgaccatattggcagagccccagccgctgcatgcatagcttga**  
**gtattctatagtgccacctaataatwagcttgwcgta**

**Figure 3** (b) Nucleotide sequence of the cDNA encoding the *Lupinus angustifolius* cytosolic MDH (denoted *LangMDH2*) of -P treatments. The catalytic active site is underlined ( ). The deduced amino acid sequence is denoted below the nucleotide sequence in the standard one-letter code. The translation stop codon is designated with an asterik (\*).



#### 4.4.4 Homology to other known MDH proteins

Both putative MDH proteins, *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2*, displayed over 90% homology to MDH proteins from other legumes, e.g. *Medicago sativa*, *M. truncatula*, *Glycine max* and *Cicer arietinum* (Table 3 & Fig. 4). The least similar of the legumes was *Sesbania rostrata*, which is known to form a mutualistic symbiosis in both its stem and root system with *Azorhizobium caulinodans*. It only shared sequence homology of 36% with both *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2*. Similarly, compared with other non-leguminous plants, *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2* displayed the lowest similarity to *Arabidopsis thaliana* of about 70% and 71%, respectively (Table 3).



```

*      20      *      40      *      60      *      80      *      100
LangMDH1 : NAKDFVRLVITGAAGQIGYALVEMIRAGVHLGSDQPVILHLLDIPPAEELNGVKMELVDAAFELKGVVATTDVAEACTGVNIAVMVGGFPRKEGMRKDVMSKNV : 107
LangMDH2 : .....A.....V.....L..... : 107
LaMDH1   : ...N.....V..... : 107
LaMDH2   : ...R.....A.....L..... : 107
M.sativa : .....P.....M...A.....V..... : 107
M.truncatu : .....P.....M...A.....V..... : 107
C.arietinu : .....P.....M.....V..... : 107
G.max : .....P.....M.....V.....T..... : 107

*      120      *      140      *      160      *      180      *      200      *
LangMDH1 : SIYKSOAGALEKHAANCKVLVWNPANTNALLKEEAPSIPEKNISCLTRLDHNRALGQISERLNVQVSDVKNVITNGNHSSQYDPVNHAVTTPAGEKFKRELV : 214
LangMDH2 : .....T...A...A..... : 214
LaMDH1   : .....F..... : 214
LaMDH2   : .....Y.....K..T..N.....T..... : 214
M.sativa : .....R.....T.....N.....G... : 214
M.truncatu : .....R..... : 214
C.arietinu : .....Q.....S...EE.....T...T...K..... : 214
G.max : .....T.....T.....A.S.....I : 214

220      *      240      *      260      *      280      *      300      *      320
LangMDH1 : ADDAWINSEETATVQQRGAALIKARKLSSALSAAACDHIRDVLTPEGTWVSMGVYSDGSGYNVPAGLYSFPVTTQNGENKIVQGLAIDFGRKLLDTARELV : 321
LangMDH2 : .....D.....AA.....P.....Q... : 321
LaMDH1   : .....I.....G..... : 321
LaMDH2   : C.....S..... : 321
M.sativa : S.....G...S.....Q..F.....S.....CA.....S.....T : 321
M.truncatu : S.....G...S.....Q..F.....S.....CA.....S..... : 321
C.arietinu : S.....G...P.....F.....S.....S..... : 321
G.max : .....G...T.....Q.....CA...A...S.....K..F : 321

*
LangMDH1 : EEKALAYSCLS : 332
LangMDH2 : .....H... : 332
LaMDH1   : .....T : 332
LaMDH2   : ..... : 332
M.sativa : ...N..H... : 332
M.truncatu : ...N..... : 332
C.arietinu : ...N..... : 332
G.max : .....N : 332

```



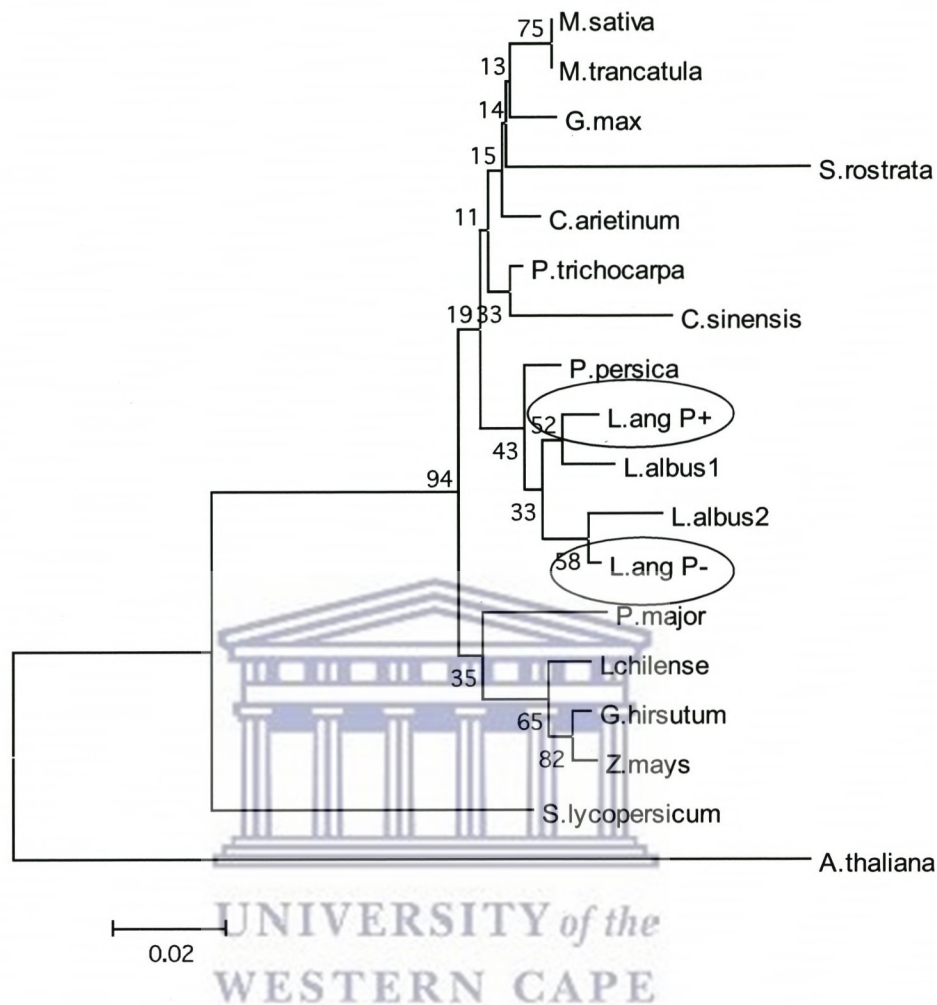
**Figure 4.** Amino acid sequence alignment of the protein encoded by *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2* with deduced cMDHs of other legumes. Dots indicate identical amino acids. Numbers on the right-hand side of each sequence indicate the last amino acid number of that line. The cMDH polypeptides used in the comparison are *Lupinus albus1* (AAO15574.1), *Lupinus albus2* (AAO15575.1), *Medicago sativa* (AAB99756.1), *Medicago truncatula* (ACJ84983.1), *Glycine max* (AAS18241.1) and *Cicer arietinum* (CAC10208.1).



**Table 3.** Percentage of amino acid sequence identity between *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2* from *Lupinus angustifolius* and MDHs from other legume- and non-leguminous plant sources. \**Sesbania rostrata* is an annual woody- or short-lived perennial tropical legume, which is known to form a mutualistic symbiosis in both its stem and root system with *Azorhizobium caulinodans*.

|                        | GENBANK<br>accession # | % Identity to<br><i>LangMDH1</i> | % Identity to<br><i>LangMDH2</i> |
|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>Legumes</b>         |                        |                                  |                                  |
| <i>LangMDH1</i>        | not assigned           | 100                              | 96                               |
| <i>LangMDH2</i>        | not assigned           | 96                               | 100                              |
| <i>L. albus1</i>       | AAO15574.1             | 98                               | 95                               |
| <i>L. albus2</i>       | AAO15575.1             | 96                               | 95                               |
| <i>M. sativa</i>       | AAB99756.1             | 93                               | 93                               |
| <i>M. truncatula</i>   | ACJ84983.1             | 94                               | 93                               |
| <i>G. max</i>          | AAS18241.1             | 94                               | 93                               |
| <i>C. arietinum</i>    | CAC10208.1             | 94                               | 93                               |
| * <i>S. rostrata</i>   | Q8W4XO                 | 36                               | 36                               |
| <b>Non-legumes</b>     |                        |                                  |                                  |
| <i>P. persica</i>      | AAL11502.1             | 94                               | 92                               |
| <i>P. trichocarpa</i>  | 7456432                | 94                               | 93                               |
| <i>C. sinensis</i>     | ABK22380.1             | 90                               | 90                               |
| <i>L. chilense</i>     | ABB16910.1             | 92                               | 90                               |
| <i>P. major</i>        | CAH58641.1             | 93                               | 91                               |
| <i>G. hirsutum</i>     | ACJ11738.1             | 92                               | 91                               |
| <i>Z. mays</i>         | NP001147160.1          | 90                               | 89                               |
| <i>S. lycopersicum</i> | AAU29199.1             | 83                               | 83                               |
| <i>A. thaliana</i>     | NP200483.1             | 71                               | 71                               |

The phylogeny of 18 cMDH genes present in GENBANK, revealed that the proteins identified in this study, formed a separate cluster with cMDHs of *L. albus* (*LaMDH1* and *LaMDH2*) (Fig. 5). Some of the other known legume species in this phylogenetic tree formed clusters separate from the amide-exporting *Lupinus*.



**Figure 5.** Evolutionary relationships of 18 taxa. The evolutionary history was inferred using the Neighbor-Joining method (Saitou & Nei, 1987). The percentage of replicate trees in which the associated taxa clustered together in the bootstrap test (100 replicates) is shown next to the branches (Felsenstein, 1985). The tree is drawn to scale, with branch lengths in the same units as those of the evolutionary distances used to infer the phylogenetic tree. All positions containing gaps and missing data were eliminated from the dataset (Complete deletion option). There were a total of 130 positions in the final dataset. Phylogenetic analyses were conducted in MEGA 4.1 (Tamura *et al.*, 2007). The circled portions illustrate where proteins isolated in this study are located in relation to the other proteins in the tree.



#### 4.5 Discussion

It is demonstrated here that the  $N_2$  fixation capacity by root nodules subjected to short-term LP conditions may be attained through increasing flux via the PEPc-MDH route, which drives increased malate synthesis. This apparent increase in malate concentration in root nodules, under LP may have been the result of the distinct expression of a novel MDH under LP.

It is well established that P deprived conditions lead to conventional glycolytic metabolism being circumvented in favour of alternative routes (Theodorou & Plaxton, 1993). This is an adaptive strategy that serves the purpose of the continuation of metabolism when unfavourable conditions are encountered. In root nodules, where metabolism may already be restricted by limited  $O_2$ , P limitation may further impede the complete oxidation of sugars via conventional pyruvate kinase (PK) activity. Thus, P deficiency may lead to sugars being metabolized to dicarboxylic acids via the concerted actions of phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase (PEPc) and MDH. PEPc has a vital role in C provision to legumes for nitrogen assimilation and bacterial respiration (Schulze *et al.*, 1998; Le Roux *et al.*, 2006). In addition, the PEPc reaction also liberates  $P_i$ , which could buffer the metabolism against acute P deficiency (Theodorou & Plaxton, 1993). This study corroborates the notion that the alternative route for phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) metabolism is channeled through the PEPc-MDH route under LP, as MDH activity was enhanced. Malate concentrations were increased in accordance with the associated increase in cMDH activities under LP conditions. The P deficiency-induced activation of MDH is intended for the procurement of malate for bacteroids in

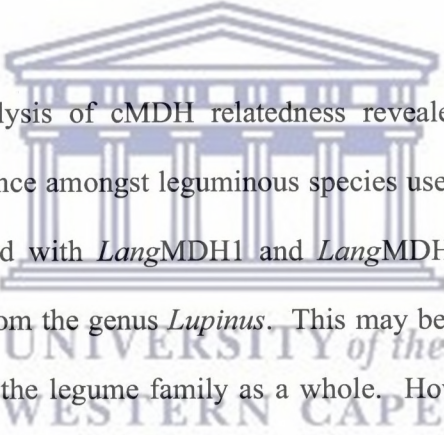
root nodules as a source of respiratory C under LP (Colebatch *et al.*, 2004). In addition, the PEPc-MDH alternative route may also produce organic acids for exudation in an attempt to solubilize sparingly available P in the growth medium under LP (Johnson *et al.*, 1994, 1996; Raghothama, 1999).

After the failure to isolate a neMDH, it can only be speculated that the cMDH would be the primary reaction responsible for the synthesis of the high malate levels under LP, reported in this study. Two independent cMDHs in *L. angustifolius*, designated *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2*, for +P and -P conditions respectively, have been isolated in this study. Sequencing data showed that the MDH1 gene had an open reading frame (ORF) of 999 nucleotides (nts) encoding a predicted protein of 332 amino acids. Similarly, the *LangMDH2* gene contained an ORF of 999 nts, coding for exactly the same sized protein as that of the *LangMDH1* form. There seems to be no significant variations in the amino acid sequence between the two amplicons, with homology exceeding 90%.

These two proteins resembled the cMDH of two previously characterized isoforms from -P proteoid roots of *L. albus* (*LaMDH1* and *LaMDH2*) with homology being between 98% and 95% similar for MDH1 and MDH2, respectively (Uhde-Stone *et al.*, 2003). Notably, interspecific sequence similarities exceeded intraspecific sequence similarities of the different MDHs, especially under P sufficient control conditions. Protein sequence analyses revealed a catalytic active site at residues 156 to 173 for both amplicons.



Malate plays an array of functional roles and several isoforms of MDH, i.e. the enzyme responsible for its synthesis, are expressed differentially, reflecting its varying functions in different cell types (Miller *et al.*, 1998). However, there is limited knowledge of different isozymes for cMDH that may be responsible for the variable biological functions in nodulated root systems, especially under P deficient conditions. In a previous study, two full-length cMDH cDNA clones were isolated and characterized through screening a library from P-deprived proteoid roots of *L. albus* (Uhde-Stone *et al.*, 2003). In order to identify cDNA for cMDH in *Lupinus angustifolius*, gene-specific primers were designed and used to probe total RNA from +P and -P root nodules.



Phylogenetic analysis of cMDH relatedness revealed that there is a high degree of divergence amongst leguminous species used, with almost all of the legumes compared with *LangMDH1* and *LangMDH2* forming independent clades separate from the genus *Lupinus*. This may be indicative of the highly diverse nature of the legume family as a whole. However, phylogeny based on this single cMDH gene may inaccurately reflect species relatedness and a better interpretation of this observation could only be given when more cMDH sequences are available.

Up-regulation of several proteins related to C (including MDH) and N metabolism in root nodules has been induced when compared with uninfected roots (Colebatch *et al.*, 2002). Le Roux *et al.* (2006; 2009) have previously demonstrated that MDH activity is markedly increased under LP conditions. Selection for increased dark CO<sub>2</sub> fixation is recognized as a feasible means of

increasing legume productivity (Groat *et al.*, 1984). It is still unclear how the MDH protein expressed under P deficiency may differ from that of the one expressed under non-stressed conditions. Thus, further analyses will be completed to gain insight into how the expression patterns of these two forms identified will differ if subjected to conditions of +P and -P.





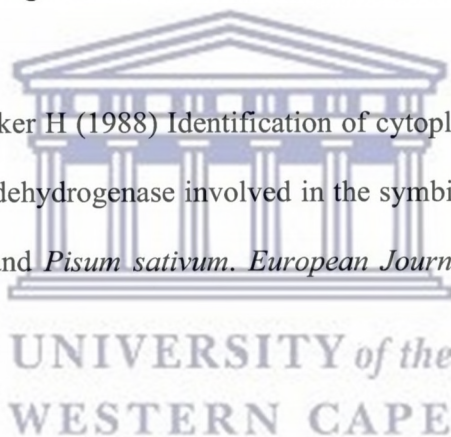
#### 4.6 References

Al-Niemi TS, Kahn ML, McDermott TR (1997) Phosphorus metabolism in the *Rhizobium tropici*-bean symbiosis. *Plant Physiology* 113: 1233-1242.

Al-Niemi TS, Kahn ML, McDermott TR (1998) Phosphorus uptake by bean nodules. *Plant and Soil* 198: 71-78.

Altschul SF, Madden TL, Schäffer AA, Zhang J, Zhang Z, Miller W, Lipman DJ (1990) Gapped BLAST and PSI-BLAST: a new generation of protein database search programmes. *Nucleic Acid Research* 25: 3389-3402.

Appels MA, Haaker H (1988) Identification of cytoplasmic nodule-associated forms of malate-dehydrogenase involved in the symbiosis between *Rhizobium leguminosarum* and *Pisum sativum*. *European Journal of Biochemistry* 171: 515-522.



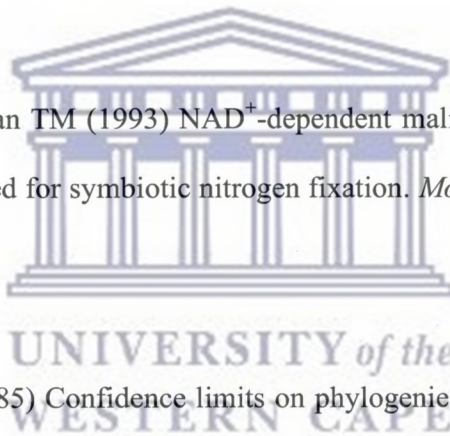
Boddey RM, Oliveira OC, Alves BJR, Urquiaga S (1995) Field application of the  $^{15}\text{N}$  isotope dilution technique for the reliable quantification of plant-associated biological nitrogen fixation. *Fertilizer Research* 42: 77-87.

Cabrerizo PM, González EM, Aparicio-Tejo PM, Arrese-Igor C (2001) Continuous  $\text{CO}_2$  enrichment leads to increased nodule biomass, carbon availability to nodules and activity of carbon-metabolising enzymes but does not enhance specific nitrogen fixation in pea. *Physiologia Plantarum* 113: 33-40.

Colebatch G, Kloska S, Trevaskis B, Freund S, Altmann T, Udvardi MK (2002) Novel aspects of symbiotic nitrogen fixation uncovered by transcript profiling with cDNA arrays. *Molecular Plant-Microbe Interaction* 15: 411-420.

Colebatch G, Desbrosses G, Ott T, Krusell L, Montanari O, Kloska S, Kopka J, Udvardi M (2004) Global changes in transcription orchestrate metabolic differentiation during symbiotic nitrogen fixation in *Lotus japonicus*. *Plant Journal* 39: 487-512.

Driscoll BT, Finan TM (1993) NAD<sup>+</sup>-dependent malic enzyme of *Rhizobium meliloti* is required for symbiotic nitrogen fixation. *Molecular Microbiology* 7: 865-873.



Felsenstein J (1985) Confidence limits on phylogenies: an approach using the bootstrap. *Evolution* 39:783-791.

Groat RG, Vance CP, Barnes DK (1984) Host plant nodule enzymes associated with selection for increased N<sub>2</sub> fixation in alfalfa. *Crop Science* 24: 895-899.

Israel DW (1993) Symbiotic dinitrogen fixation and host-plant growth during development of and recovery from phosphorus deficiency. *Physiologia Plantarum* 88: 294-300.



Johnson JF, Allan DL, Vance CP (1994) Phosphorus stress-induced proteoid roots show altered metabolism in *Lupinus albus*. *Plant Physiology* 104: 657-667.

Johnson JF, Allan DL, Vance CP, Weiblen G (1996) Root carbon dioxide fixation by phosphorus-deficient *Lupinus albus*. Contribution to organic acid exudation by proteoid roots. *Plant Physiology* 112: 19-30.

Kaur K, Singh R (1999) Sugar metabolism and partitioning in cytosol and bacteroid fractions of chickpea nodules. *Plant Physiology and Biochemistry* 37: 685-692.

Le Roux MR, Ward CL, Botha FC, Valentine AJ (2006) Routes of pyruvate synthesis in phosphorus-deficient lupin roots and nodules. *New Phytologist* 169: 399-408.

Le Roux MR, Khan S, Valentine AJ (2009) Nitrogen and carbon costs of soybean and lupin root systems during phosphate starvation. *Symbiosis* 48: 102-109.

Miller SS, Driscoll BT, Gregerson RG, Gantt JS, Vance CP (1998) Alfalfa malate dehydrogenase (MDH): molecular cloning and characterization of five different forms reveals a unique nodule-enhanced MDH. *Plant Journal* 15: 173-184.

Nicholas KB, Nicholas HB (Jr). 1997. Distributed by the author.

Raghothama KG (1999) Phosphate acquisition. *Annual Review of Plant Physiology* 50: 665-693.

Ratajczak L, Ratajczak W, Koroniak D (1989) Detection of nodule-specific forms of malate dehydrogenase from root nodules of *Lupinus luteus*. *Biochem. Physiol. Pflanzen* 184: 243-248.

Rosendahl L, Vance CP, Pedersen WB (1990) Products of dark CO<sub>2</sub> fixation in pea root nodules support bacteroid metabolism. *Plant Physiology* 93: 12-19.

Sa T-M, Israel DW (1991) Energy status and functioning of phosphorus-deficient soybean nodules. *Plant Physiology* 97: 928-935.

Saitou N, Nei M (1987) The neighbor-joining method: a new method for reconstructing phylogenetic trees. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 4:406-425.

Schulze J, Tesfaye M, Litjens HMG, Bucciarelli B, Trepp G, Miller S, Samac D, Allan D, Vance CP (2002) Malate plays a central role in plant nutrition. *Plant and Soil* 247: 133-139.



Schulze J, Temple G, Temple SJ, Beschow H, Vance CP (2006) Nitrogen fixation by white lupin under phosphorus deficiency. *Annals of Botany* 98: 731-740.

Shearer GB, Kohl DH (1986) N<sub>2</sub> fixation in field settings: estimations based on natural <sup>15</sup>N abundance. *Australian Journal of Plant Physiology* 13: 699-756.

Tamura K, Dudley J, Nei M, Kumar S (2007) MEGA4: Molecular Evolutionary Genetics Analysis (MEGA) software version 4.0. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 24:1596-1599.

Tang C, Hinsinger P, Drevon JJ, Jaillard B (2001) Phosphorus deficiency impairs early nodule functioning and enhances proton release in roots of *Medicago truncatula* L. *Annals of Botany* 88: 131-138.

Theodorou ME, Plaxton WC (1993) Metabolic adaptations of plant respiration to nutritional phosphate deprivation. *Plant Physiology* 101: 339-344.

Thompson JD, Higgins DG, Gibson TJ (1994) Clustal W: improving the sensitivity of progressive multiple sequence alignment through sequence weighting, position-specific gap penalties and weight matrix choice. *Nucleic Acid Research* 22: 4673-4680.

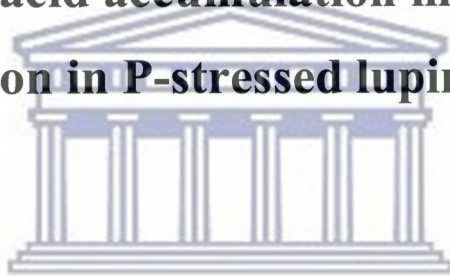
Uhde-Stone C, Gilbert G, Johnson JM, Litjens R, Zinn KE, Temple SJ, Vance CP, Allan DL (2003) Acclimation of white lupin to phosphorus deficiency involves enhanced expression of genes related to organic acid metabolism. *Plant and Soil* 248: 99-116.





# CHAPTER 5

## Organic acid accumulation may inhibit N<sub>2</sub> fixation in P-stressed lupin nodules



UNIVERSITY *of the*  
WESTERN CAPE

### Publication citation:

**Le Roux MR, Khan S, Valentine AJ** (2008) Organic acid accumulation may inhibit N<sub>2</sub> fixation in P-stressed lupin nodules. *New Phytologist* **177**: 956-964.

## 5.1 Summary

- Nodulated lupins (*Lupinus angustifolius* var. *Tanjil*) were hydroponically grown at low phosphate (LP) or adequate phosphate (HP) to assess the effect of phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase (PEPc)-derived organic acids on N assimilation in LP nodules.
- LP conditions are linked to altered organic acid metabolism by the engagement of PEP metabolism via PEPc. In LP nodules, the enhanced organic acid synthesis may reduce the available organic C for N assimilation. The diversion of C between the organic acid and amino acid pools were assessed through key nodular enzymes and  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  metabolism.
- Under LP conditions, increased rates of organic acid synthesis via PEPc and MDH, coincided with reduced N assimilation via AAT, AS, GS/GOGAT activities. There was a preferential metabolism of nodular  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  into organic acids and into particularly malate. High malate levels were associated with reduced  $\text{N}_2$  fixation and amino acids synthesis.
- These results indicate that P deficiency can enhance malate synthesis in nodules, but that excessive malate accumulation may inhibit  $\text{N}_2$  fixation and N assimilation.

**Key words:** Legume; P deficiency;  $\text{N}_2$  fixation; organic acids, amino acids, nodules



## 5.2 Introduction

Nodulated legumes are self-sufficient at acquiring nitrogen but are particularly sensitive to a wide range of other environmental limitations. In studies on mineral requirements of the legume-rhizobia symbiosis, P has received considerable attention due the greater responsiveness of traits associated with biological N<sub>2</sub> fixation than host plant growth (Israel, 1987; Olivera *et al.*, 2004). In spite of this, the relationship between low P supply and N<sub>2</sub> fixation remains obscure, primarily because of an indifferent response to P deficiency by some legume species (Vadéz *et al.*, 1996). Furthermore, the responses to sub-optimal P supply differ between the individual partners involved in the symbiosis, with nodules being less affected by fluxes in P supply than either roots or shoots (Tang *et al.*, 2001; Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002; Olivera *et al.*, 2004; Le Roux *et al.*, 2006).

Although numerous studies report on the effects of P nutrition on host plant growth and parameters that quantify N<sub>2</sub> fixing capacity of legumes, very few consider P in nodule metabolism (Jakobsen, 1985; Israel, 1987; Sa & Israel, 1991; Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998; Tang *et al.*, 2001; Le Roux *et al.*, 2006). Low P supply eventually reduces plant growth, with subsequent reduction in N demand and N<sub>2</sub> fixation. Other responses to limiting P in the growth medium in non-legumes range from an increase in root carbohydrate content (Rychter & Randall, 1994) to decline in total respiration rate and root ATP concentrations (Wanke *et al.*, 1998; Rychter *et al.*, 1992). Furthermore, for non-legumes a typical response to P deprivation at the physiological level is C channeling via alternative routes (Duff *et al.*, 1989; Theodorou & Plaxton,

1993). These are engaged as an adaptive measure to facilitate mitochondrial respiration by  $P_i$  deficient plant cells (Plaxton, 1996; Sieger *et al.*, 2005). For C metabolism, a major point of divergence in glycolysis is at PEP. It involves the engagement of non-adenylate requiring steps via the sequential action of PEPc and MDH, which serve to circumvent the conventional adenylate requiring pyruvate kinase (PK; EC 2.7.1.40) route. Similar data for symbiotic legumes are scant. Evidence suggests that P deficiency impacts negatively on the energy metabolism of root nodules for optimal nodule functioning (Sa & Israel, 1991), which may be detrimental to any one of the aforementioned assimilative routes. A potential drawback at this PEP branch-point would be the constant competition for C skeletons between the organic acid pool (for TCA cycle intermediates and energy) and the amino acid pool (for N assimilation) (Olivera *et al.*, 2004; Le Roux *et al.*, 2006).

A natural extension of microaerobic conditions is the altered metabolism of C to malate, instead of to pyruvate as under non-restricted conditions (Vance & Heichel, 1991). The major C substrates for bacteroid respiration and  $N_2$  fixation are dicarboxylic acids, primarily in the form of malate with effective nodules accumulating high levels of this metabolite (Kouchi & Yoneyama, 1986; McRae *et al.*, 1989; Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990). Furthermore, malate is rapidly labeled when nodules are exposed to  $^{14}CO_2$ , which is indicative of the importance of this particular metabolite in nodules (Streeter, 1987; Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990). Moreover, metabolomic and transcriptomic analyses indicate that elevated levels of malate in root nodules are mainly the result of very low oxygen and phosphorus concentrations (Colebatch *et al.*, 2004).



Given the role of organic acids in nodule metabolism, it is unclear how P deficiency affects C partitioning between the organic acid- and amino acid pools in nodules. The aim of the present study was to assess the effect of PEPc-derived organic acids on N assimilation nodules under prolonged P<sub>i</sub> deprivation. This was assessed through the diversion of C between the organic acid- and amino acid pools through key nodular enzymes and <sup>14</sup>CO<sub>2</sub> metabolism.

### 5.3 Materials and methods

#### 5.3.1 Plant growth conditions

All seeds were germinated in vermiculite, which had been commercially irradiated by a cobalt C-60 source of gamma radiation at a dose of 18 kGray. Pots measuring 10 cm in diameter were washed in Ekon-D and rinsed in distilled water, then dried. The pots were then filled with vermiculite. For all experiments, seeds of *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Wonga) were inoculated with a rhizobial inoculum containing *Bradyrhizobium* sp. (*Lupinus*) bacteria. Seeds of lupins were coated in a saturated sucrose solution and 2 g of inoculum / 150 seeds was added and mixed. The seeds were spread out, away from direct sunlight, to allow the inoculum to dry. Once dry, the seeds were planted in pots containing vermiculite.

Seeds were germinated in an east-facing glasshouse at the University of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch, South Africa. The range of midday irradiances was between 540-600  $\mu\text{mol m}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$  and the average day/night temperatures and humidities were 23/15°C and 35/75% respectively. Pots were watered daily

with distilled water until seeds germinated. Seedlings were transferred 10 d after germination to 22 l hydroponic tanks under the same glasshouse conditions. The tanks contained a modified Long Ashton nutrient solution containing no N, 2 mM  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  and 0.05 mM MES (pH 5.8). Solutions were changed every 3-4 d. The hypocotyls of seedlings were wrapped with foam rubber at their bases and inserted through holes in the lids of the tanks. Each tank was supplied with an air supply line, which bubbled air containing 360 ppm  $\text{CO}_2$ . After two weeks, once nodules were established, plants were divided into two treatments. Half of the tanks were maintained at an adequate P concentration (2 mM  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ ; HP treatment), while the other half were switched to a low P nutrient regime (2  $\mu\text{M}$   $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ ; LP treatment) for a further 24 d, after which plants were harvested.

### **5.3.2 Inorganic phosphate determination**

$\text{P}_i$  levels were determined using a modified Fiske-Subbarow method (Rychter & Mikulska 1990). Approximately 0.5 g of root or nodule was homogenized in 500  $\mu\text{l}$  10% trichloroacetic acid (TCA) at 4°C. This was diluted 3 times with cold 5% TCA and centrifuged for 10 min at 2 500 g at 4°C. The supernatant was removed and centrifuged a further 10 min at 13 000 g at 4°C. The resultant supernatant was kept on ice (or stored -20°C) until ready for use.



### 5.3.3 Protein extraction and determination

The extraction of PEPc, PK, MDH and ME was performed according to Ocaña *et al.*, (1996) modified so that 0.5 g of tissue was extracted in 2 ml of extraction buffer consisting of 100 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.8), 1 mM EDTA, 5 mM dithiothreitol (DTT), 20% (v/v) ethylene glycol, plus 2% (m/v) insoluble polyvinylpoly pyrrolidone (PVPP) and one Complete Protease Inhibitor Cocktail tablet (Roche) per 50 ml of buffer. Crude extracts of N assimilating enzymes, GS/GOGAT, AAT were prepared according to the method of Olivera *et al.* (2004). Aspartate synthetase (AS) was extracted according to Egli *et al.*, (1989). The protein concentration was determined by the procedure of Bradford (1976) using a protein assay reagent (Bio Rad) and bovine serum albumin (BSA) as standard. Amino acid concentrations were determined according to the ninhydrin method of Rosen *et al.*, (1957) using leucine as a standard. In the same extract  $\text{NH}_4^+$  was measured using a phenol-hypochloride method (Solorzano, 1969).

### 5.3.4 Enzyme Assays

*Phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase* (PEPc): PEPc activity was determined spectrophotometrically by coupling the carboxylation reaction with exogenous NADH-malate dehydrogenase and measuring NADH oxidation at 340 nm and 30 °C. The standard assay mixture contained 100 mM Tris (pH 8.5), 5 mM  $\text{MgCl}_2$ , 5 mM  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , 4 mM PEP, 0.20 mM NADH and 5 U MDH (Ocaña *et al.*, 1996). The blanks consisted of a reaction medium without PEP.

*Pyruvate kinase* (PK): PK activity was assayed in a buffer containing 75 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.0), 5 mM  $\text{MgCl}_2$ , 1 mM ADP, 3 mM PEP, 0.18 mM NADH and lactate dehydrogenase (3 U) (Smith 1985). The blanks consisted of one

reaction in which ADP was omitted and then another from which PEP was absent.

*NADH-Malate dehydrogenase* (MDH): MDH was assayed as described by Appels and Haaker (1988). The reaction mixture contained 25 mM  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , 0.2 mM NADH and 0.4 mM OAA. The pH was adjusted to 7.5 with 1 mM HCl (Appels & Haaker 1988). The blanks consisted of a reaction medium without OAA.

*Malic enzyme* (ME): This assay monitored the increase in absorption at 340 nm due to the formation of NADPH or NADH. The assay mixture contained 80 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.5), 2 mM  $\text{MnCl}_2$ , 1 mM malate and 0.4 mM NADP or  $\text{NAD}^+$  (Appels & Haaker 1988). The blanks consisted of a reaction medium without malate.

*Aspartate amino transferase* (AAT): AAT activity was determined in a reaction medium containing 4 mM  $\text{MgCl}_2$ , 10 mM aspartic acid, 0.2 mM NADH and 1 mM 2-oxoglutarate in 50 mM Tris-HCl buffer (pH 8.0) (Olivera *et al.*, 2004).

*Glutamine synthetase* (GS): GS activity was measured in a final volume of 250  $\mu\text{l}$  of imidazole (pH 7.2), 20 mM  $\text{MgCl}_2$ , 25 mM hydroxylamine, 100 mM glutamate and 10 mM ATP in accordance with Olivera *et al.*, (2004). Absorbance was determined at 540 nm.

*Glutamate synthase* (GOGAT): GOGAT activities were measured spectrophotometrically, monitoring absorbance due to NADH at 340 nm. NADH-GOGAT were assayed in 100 mM  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$  (pH 7.6) containing 0.1% (v/v) 2-mercaptoethanol. NADH-GOGAT activity was measured using 100 mM NADH, 2.5 mM  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate, 10 mM L-glutamine and 1 mM



aminooxyacetate (to inhibit aminotransferase activities) (Olivera *et al.*, 2004). GOGAT activities were corrected for endogenous NAD<sup>+</sup> (NADH) reduction (oxidation) in the absence of added substrate. All measurements of NADH-GOGAT activity were made within 3 to 4 h of extraction.

Nodule host plant enzyme activities were determined as initial rates of reaction at 25 to 30 °C. All the reactions were initiated by adding 30 µl crude extract to reaction mixture in a total volume of 250 µl. Initial reaction rates have been shown to be proportional to the concentration of enzyme used under the conditions used.

### **5.3.5 Whole plant <sup>14</sup>C incorporation**

Roots of intact plants were supplied with 42 nmol NaHCO<sub>3</sub> containing 0.093 MBq NaH<sup>14</sup>CO<sub>3</sub>, and pulsed with air for 30 s thereafter every 15 minutes for an hour. In addition to the 15-minute intervals of air pulses, the solutions in the cuvettes were also swirled by hand every 5 minutes. After an hour the plants were harvested. Roots were rinsed twice in separate containers of distilled water and blotted dry. Plants were then separated into root, nodule and shoot components, which were immediately weighed and quenched in liquid N before storage at -80 °C.

### **5.3.6 <sup>14</sup>C fractionation**

Components were homogenised with 80 % (v/v) ethanol and separated into soluble and insoluble components. The soluble component was subsequently separated into water soluble and chloroform soluble components. The water-

soluble component was further fractionated into amino acid, organic acid and carbohydrate fractions, as described by Atkins & Canvin (1971).

### 5.3.7 C costs determinations

Nodule construction cost (mmol C. g<sup>-1</sup> DW) were calculated according to Mortimer *et al.*, (2005).  $C_w = [C + (kN/14) \times (180/24)](1/0.89)(6\ 000/180)$ , where  $C_w$  is the construction costs of the tissue (mmol C. g<sup>-1</sup> DW),  $C$  is the carbon concentration (mmol C. g<sup>-1</sup> DW),  $k$  is the reduction state of the N substrate (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>, derived from N<sub>2</sub> reduction, was taken as the source of N for amino acid synthesis, therefore  $k$  is -3) and  $N$  is the organic nitrogen content of the tissue (g. g<sup>-1</sup> DW). The constant (1/0.89) represents the fraction of the construction cost that provides reductant that is not incorporated into biomass (Williams *et al.*, 1987; Peng *et al.*, 1993) and (6 000/180) converts units of g glucose per g<sup>-1</sup> DW to mmol C. g<sup>-1</sup> DW. Growth respiration (mmol CO<sub>2</sub>. g<sup>-1</sup> DW) representing the C respired for the biosynthesis of new tissue was calculated according to Peng *et al.*, (1993).

### 5.3.8 Measurement of nodule respiration

Oxygen uptake by nodulated root segments was measured at 25 °C for 2-5 min using a Clark oxygen electrode. Although excision can affect the nodule metabolism, we attempted to reduce the impact of the detachment. This was achieved by using nodulated root segments and limiting the time of the assay to under 5 minutes after detachment. According to Vessey (1994) these precautions can reduce the potential artifacts associated with nodule excision. Detached nodulated root segments were rinsed in distilled water and placed in



a cuvette containing 3ml aerated nutrient medium (sufficient or deficient). Upon completion of the measurements, nodules were oven dried at 80°C for 48 h. the nodules were weighed and respiration expressed on a dry weight basis.

### **5.3.9 Nitrogenase activity**

Nitrogenase activity of nodules (attached to a piece of root) was measured according to Parsons and Baker (1996). Ethylene and acetylene concentrations were measured using a Varian gas chromatograph with a 1200 x 1.6 mm Porapak T (80`100) mesh column. Gas samples were injected directly into the gas chromatograph and analysis was completed within 5 min. Although excision can affect the nodule metabolism, we attempted to reduce the impact of the detachment. This was achieved by using nodulated root segments and limiting the time of the assay to under 5 minutes after detachment. According to Vessey (1994) these precautions can reduce the potential artifacts associated with nodule excision.

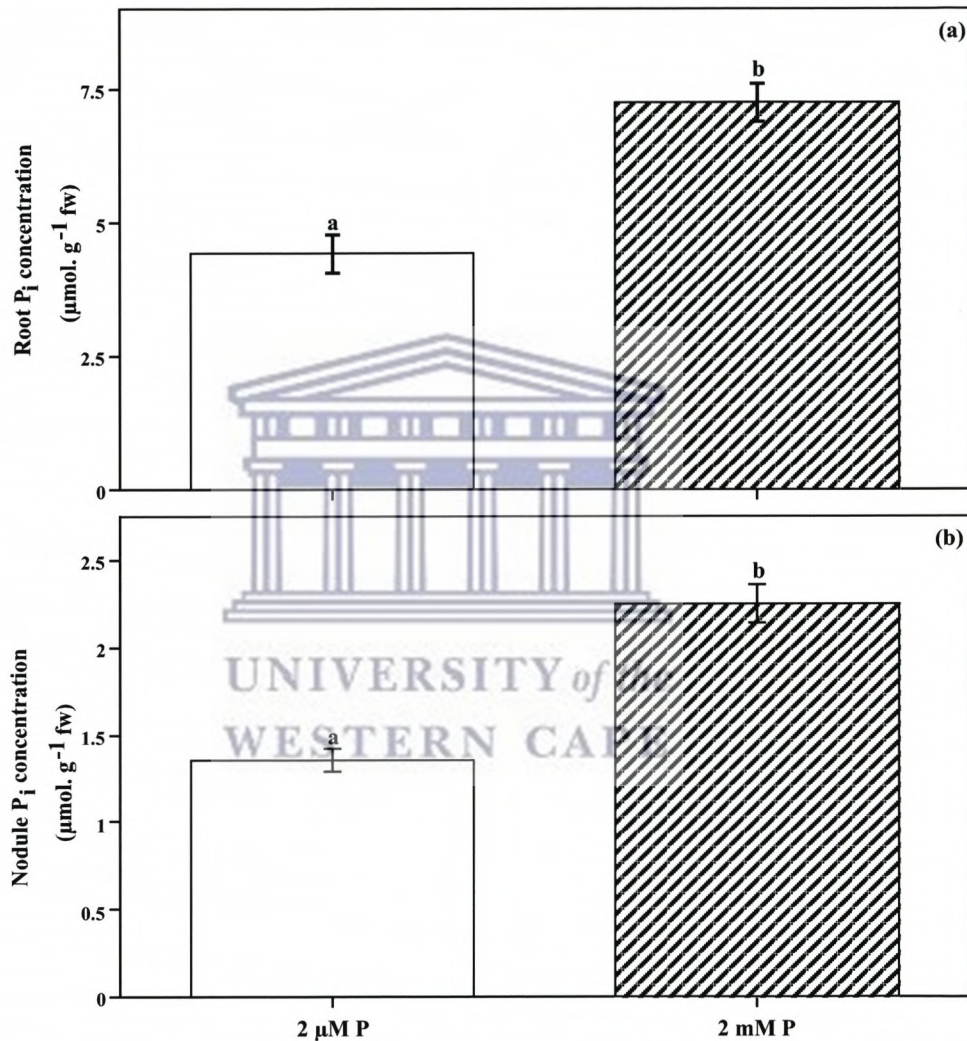
### **5.3.10 Statistical analysis**

Averages for the data are means of separate replicates ( $n = 4$ ). All data were analysed by single ANOVA. Percentage data was arcsine transformed prior to analysis and ratios were square root transformed prior to analysis. All data was then subjected to a post-hoc LSD test to determine significance.

## 5.4 Results

### 5.4.1 Growth and respiration following P starvation

The concentration of  $P_i$  declined markedly after 25 d of P starvation in both roots and nodules (Fig. 1a,b). The  $P_i$  decline for both compartments was approximately 40%.



**Figure 1.** (a) Root  $P_i$ - and (b) nodule  $P_i$  concentrations of P starved and P sufficient lupin plants. Nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Wonga) plants were grown for 5 weeks in hydroponic culture in a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm  $CO_2$  at the roots zone. A low P condition was induced for 24 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2  $\mu$ M P (LP). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (HP) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).



Nodule biomass accumulation growth respiration costs declined with LP, although the construction costs of tissues remained unchanged (Table 1).

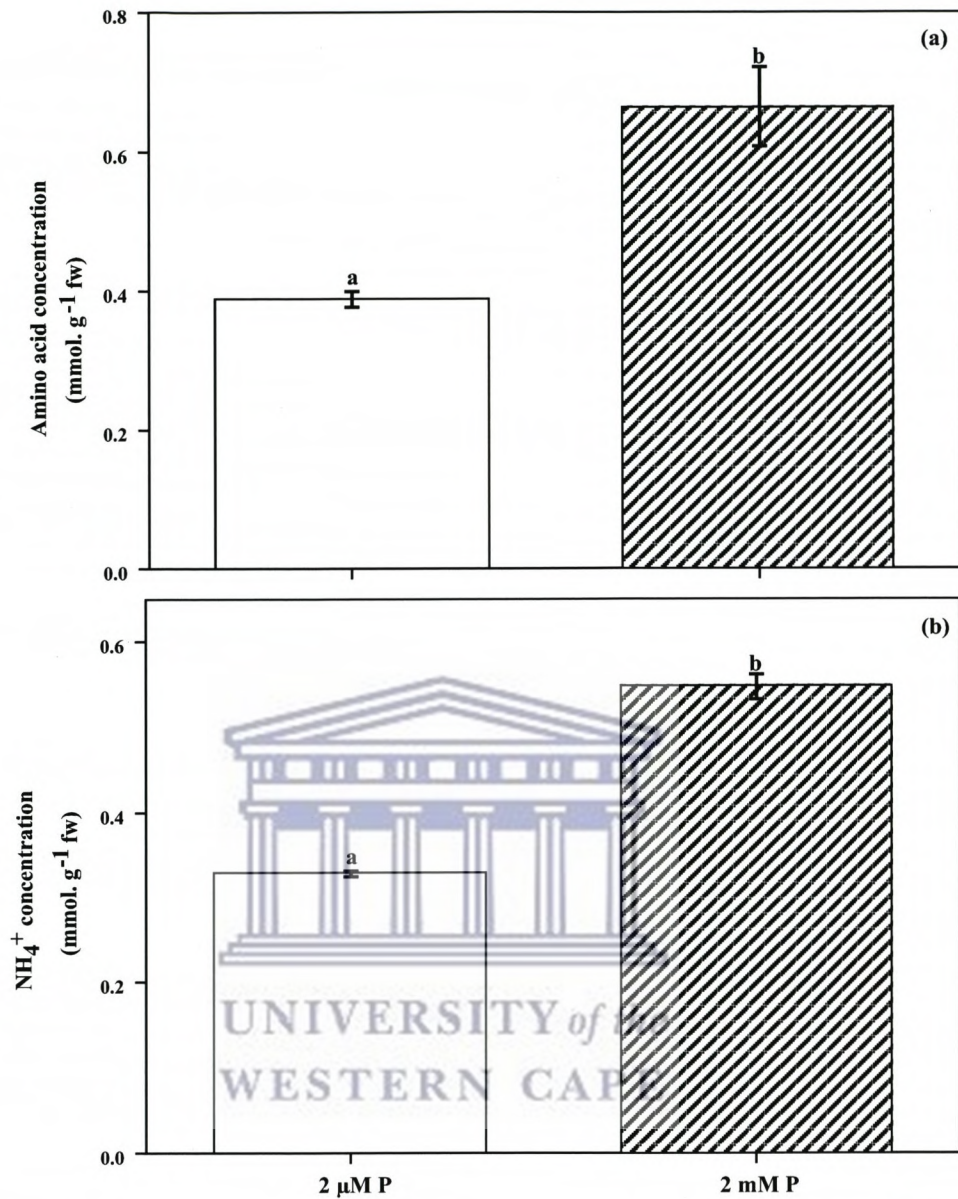
#### 5.4.2 Nitrogen metabolism

Nodules at LP supply showed a decline in nitrogenase activity via the acetylene reduction assay (ARA), both on a fresh mass basis and expressed per milligram protein (Table 1).

**Table 1.** Nodular growth, biomass and respiratory costs and nitrogen nutrition of P starved and P sufficient lupin nodules. Nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Wonga) plants were grown for 5 weeks in hydroponic culture in a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub> at the roots zone. A low P condition was induced for 24 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2 µM P. The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

| <b>Nodule biomass parameters</b>   | <b>2 µM P</b> | <b>2 mM P</b> |
|--|---------------|---------------|
| Nodule dry weight (g. plant <sup>-1</sup> )  | 0.047 a       | 0.071 b       |
| Construction costs (mmol C. g <sup>-1</sup> DW)  | 3413 a        | 3614 a        |
| Growth respiration costs (mmol CO <sub>2</sub> . g <sup>-1</sup> . day <sup>-1</sup> )   | 6059 a        | 7535 b        |
| <b>Nodule nitrogen nutrition</b>   |               |               |
| N <sub>2</sub> fixation via Acetylene Reduction Activity (nmol. g <sup>-1</sup> FW)      | 60.70 a       | 78.23 b       |
| N <sub>2</sub> fixation via Acetylene Reduction Activity (nmol. g <sup>-1</sup> protein) | 15.45 a       | 67.15 b       |
| Nitrogen concentration (mmol N. g <sup>-1</sup> DW)                                      | 41.42 a       | 56.11 b       |

There was a marked decline in the concentration of amino acids and NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> in the nodules of plants that were P deprived (Fig. 2a, b).



**Figure 2.** (a) Amino acid- and (b)  $\text{NH}_4^+$  concentrations of P starved and P sufficient lupin nodules. Nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Wonga) plants were grown for 5 weeks in hydroponic culture in a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm  $\text{CO}_2$  at the roots zone. A low P condition was induced for 24 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2  $\mu\text{M}$  P (LP). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (HP) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).



In all P treatments, GS activity was approximately 2 to 3-fold higher than GOGAT enzyme activity. However, both enzyme activities were unaffected by P treatment (Table 2). Similarly, AAT activity remained unchanged under P deficient conditions (Table 2).

**Table 2.** Specific activities of selected enzymes involved in amino acid and organic acid synthesis of P starved and P sufficient lupin nodules. Nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Wonga) plants were grown for 5 weeks in hydroponic culture in a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub> at the roots zone. A low P condition was induced for 24 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2 µM P. The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

| <b>Nodular enzyme activities</b>  | <b>2 µM P</b> | <b>2 mM P</b> |
|---|---------------|---------------|
| <b>Amino acid synthesizing enzymes</b> (µmol. min <sup>-1</sup> . mg <sup>-1</sup> protein)   |               |               |
| Aspartate amino transferase (AAT)   | 32.51a        | 28.39a        |
| Glutemine synthetase (GS)   | 1.26a         | 1.19a         |
| Glutemate oxogluterate amino transferase (GOGAT)  | 0.64a         | 0.40a         |
| <b>Organic acid synthesizing enzymes</b> (µmol. min <sup>-1</sup> . mg <sup>-1</sup> protein) |               |               |
| PhosphoEnol Pyruvate Carboxylase (PEPc)   | 0.254b        | 0.169a        |
| Malate Dehydrogenase (MDH)  | 0.15b         | 0.06a         |
| Pyruvate Kinase (PK)  | 0.12a         | 0.28b         |
| <b>Malate dehydrogenase: amino acid synthesizing enzymes</b>                                  |               |               |
| MDH:AAT   | 0.004b        | 0.002a        |
| MDH:GS  | 0.115b        | 0.053a        |
| MDH GOGAT   | 0.240b        | 0.156a        |

#### 5.4.3 *C metabolism*

Enzymes of the alternative route of PEP metabolism (i.e. PEPc; MDH) were both increased markedly under  $P_i$  deprivation. PEPc registered an increase of approximately 2-fold in activity as compared with PEPc of nodules at sufficient P (Table 2). The activity of MDH was also increased about 3-fold under P deficiency (Table 2). By comparison the activity of PK, which constitutes the conventional route of C incorporation, declined 2-fold under P deficient conditions. Under LP conditions, this PK activity constituted approximately 50% that of the PEPc activity, whilst at HP supply, PK activity was almost 2-fold higher than PEPc activity. There was an increase in the ratio of MDH activities compared with all the enzyme activities (GS, GOGAT, AAT) of the amino acid-synthesizing pathway (Table 2).

#### 5.4.4 *Nodular $^{14}C$ fractionation and respiration*

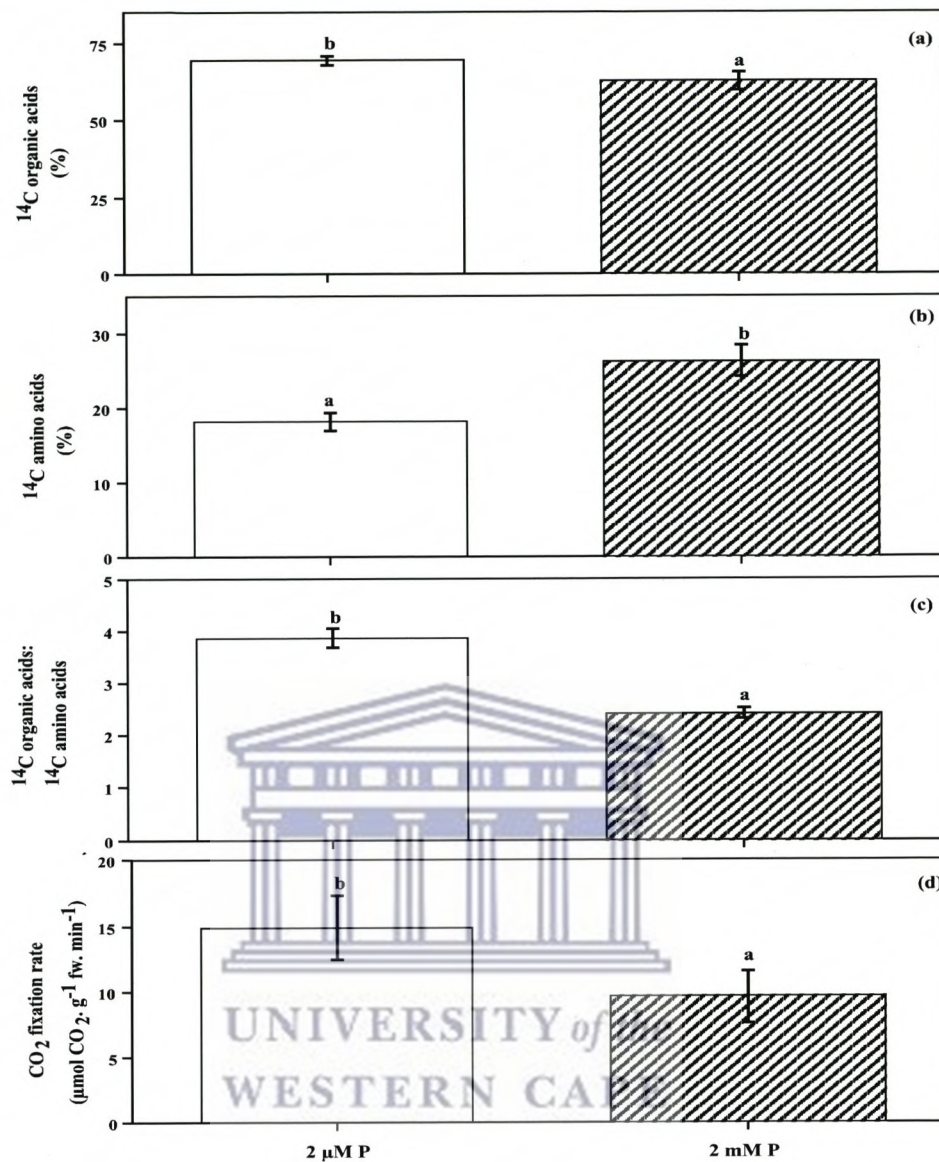
There was a higher incorporation of  $^{14}CO_2$  in  $P_i$ -deficient nodules and their constituent fractions (Table 3). During  $P_i$  deficiency the ratio of incorporation of  $^{14}C$  shifted towards non-nitrogenous organic compounds (Table 3).



**Table 3.** Incorporation and assimilation of dissolved  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  in detached nodules from P starved and P sufficient *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Wonga) plants after 5 minutes of  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  labelling. Nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Wonga) plants were grown for 5 weeks in hydroponic culture in a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm  $\text{CO}_2$  at the roots zone. A low P condition was induced for 24 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2  $\mu\text{M}$  P. The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

| <b>DI<math>^{14}\text{C}</math> concentration (nmol <math>^{14}\text{C}</math>. g<math>^{-1}</math> FW)</b> | <b>2 <math>\mu\text{M}</math> P</b> | <b>2 mM P</b> |
|---|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| Soluble fractions   | 5.86b                               | 2.82a         |
| Insoluble fractions   | 10.57b                              | 3.40a         |
| Lipid fractions   | 0.29b                               | 0.12a         |
| Total incorporation   | 14.11b                              | 9.32a         |
| $^{14}\text{C}$ incorporation C:N ratio   | 4.70b                               | 2.23a         |

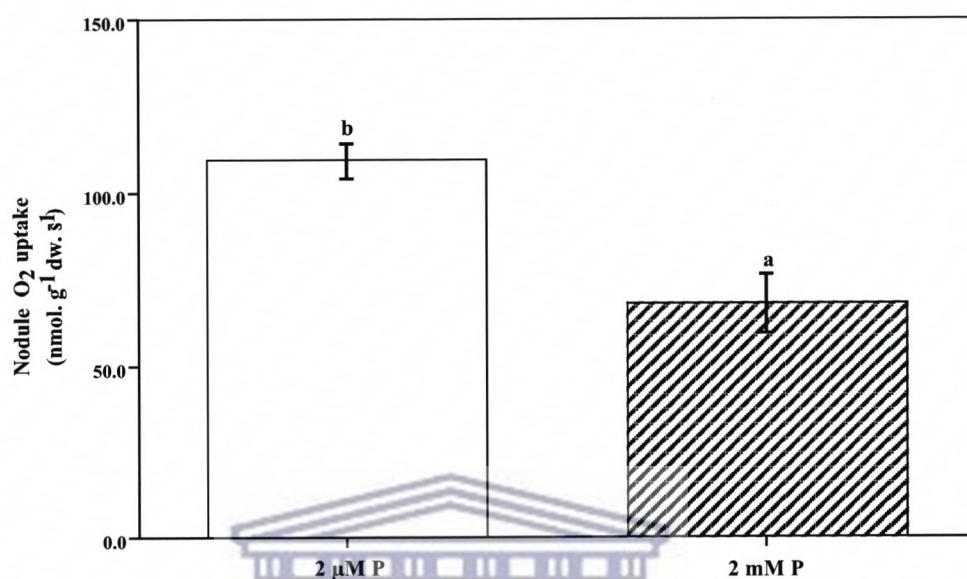
Most of the incorporated  $^{14}\text{C}$  was recovered in organic acids, which were higher at LP supply than at HP (Fig. 3a). The percentage of organic acids incorporated into nodules at LP supply was approximately 2 times higher than that for amino acids under the same condition (Fig. 3a,b,c). This increase in organic acid concentration was inversely related to the amino acid concentration in nodules (Fig. 3a,b,c). The higher incorporation into organic acids coincided with a higher fixation rate of  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  in LP nodules than HP nodules (Fig. 3d).



**Figure 3.** Dark  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  fixation into (a) organic acid fraction and (b) amino acid fractions, (c) the ratio of organic acids to amino acids and (d) the  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  fixation rate of detached nodules from P starved and P sufficient lupins after 5 minutes of  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  labelling. Nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Wonga) plants were grown for 5 weeks in hydroponic culture in a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm  $\text{CO}_2$  at the roots zone. A low P condition was induced for 24 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2  $\mu\text{M P}$  (LP). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (HP) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

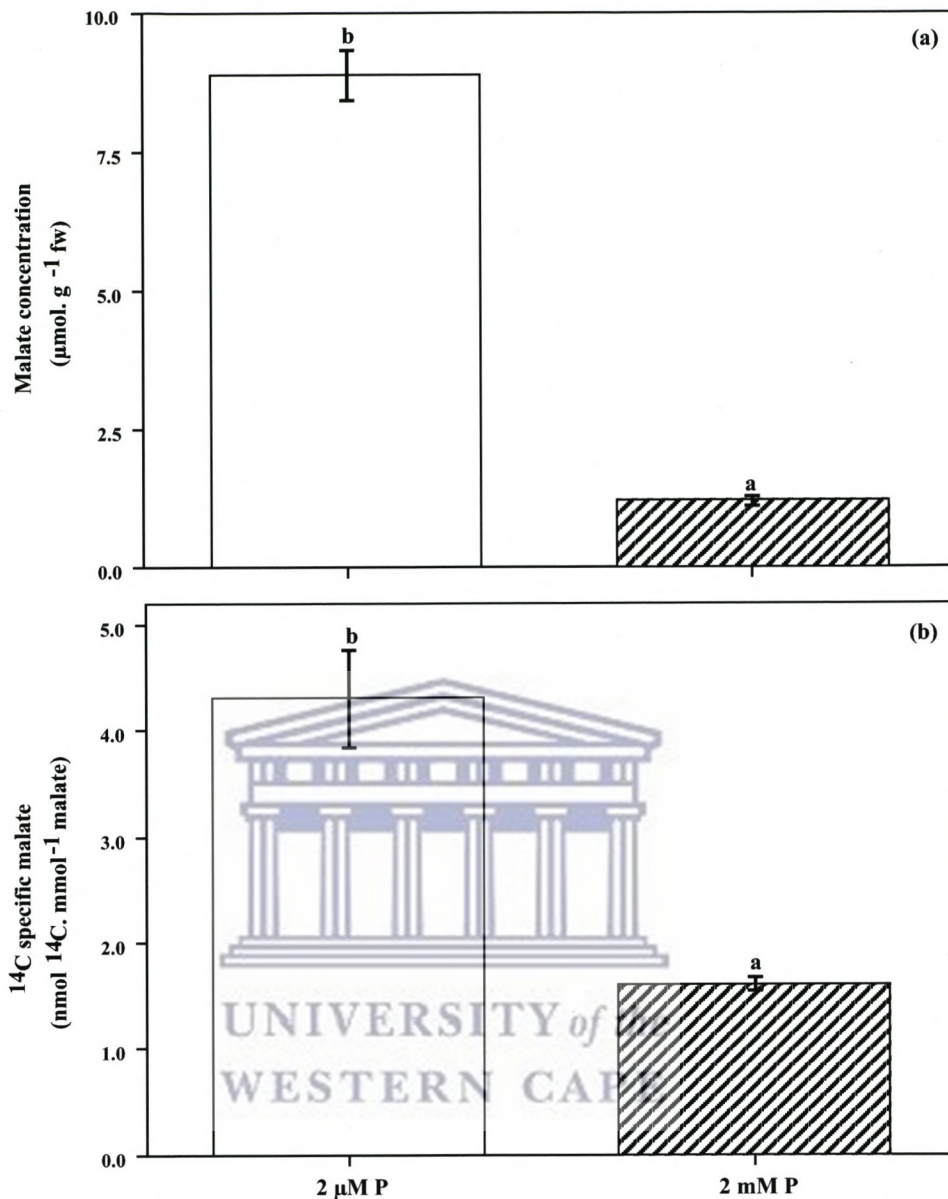


The long-term P starvation period also caused an increase in O<sub>2</sub> consumption rate of nodules (Fig. 4).



**Figure 4.** O<sub>2</sub> uptake rate of P starved and P sufficient lupin nodules. Nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Wonga) plants were grown for 5 weeks in hydroponic culture in a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub> at the roots zone. A low P condition was induced for 24 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2 μM P (LP). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (HP) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

There was a pronounced increase in total malate levels (derived from PEP and TCA cycle) in nodules subjected to LP conditions as opposed to nodules of P sufficient controls (Fig. 5a). However under LP conditions, most of the malate appears to be derived from PEP, as determined by <sup>14</sup>HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> incorporation via PEPc (Fig 5b).



**Figure 5.** (a) Total malate concentration, and (b) <sup>14</sup>C enriched malate of P starved and P sufficient lupin nodules. Nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Wonga) plants were grown for 5 weeks in hydroponic culture in a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing 2 mM P. The solution was aerated with ambient air containing 360 ppm CO<sub>2</sub> at the roots zone. A low P condition was induced for 24 days in the P starved plants by switching the P supply to 2 μM P (LP). The P sufficient plants remained at 2 mM P (HP) supply. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).



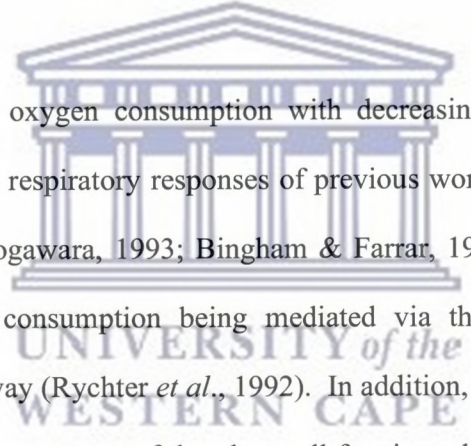
## 5.5 Discussion

During long-term P deficiency of nodules, the reduced N<sub>2</sub> fixation and N assimilation were associated with an increase in the allocation of PEP-derived C into organic acids, relative to amino acids.

Nodules are known to be strong sinks for P, particularly under conditions of P deficiency (Al-Niemi *et al.*, 1997; 1998; Tang *et al.*, 2001; Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002). It has been reported that nodules often respond slower to P deficiency than roots (Israel, 1993; Le Roux *et al.*, 2006). This is evidenced by the delayed decline of P<sub>i</sub> in root nodules only 25 d after P starvation in this study, compared with a previous study where 14 d of P withdrawal had no apparent effect on P<sub>i</sub> concentration of nodules (Le Roux *et al.*, 2006). Here, prolonged P deficiency decreased nodule DW, which concurs with previous reports of the effects of low P supply on legumes (Drevon & Hartwig, 1997; Olivera *et al.*, 2004). Although the growth respiration, an indication of the respired C associated with the biosynthesis of new tissue (Peng *et al.*, 1993), declined with the decreased nodular growth, the construction costs of these nodules were unaffected. Since construction costs represent the amount of simple carbohydrate required to build new tissue (Peng *et al.*, 1993), this implies that new nodular growth was limited not by C allocation, but by P supply.

The low P induced decreases in nodular growth have been attributed to the decline of N<sub>2</sub> fixation (Ribet & Drevon, 1995) but the present study implicates changes in C allocation between amino acid and organic acid pools. The decline in P<sub>i</sub> and adenylates during P stress can increase the engagement of alternative routes to circumvent the adenylate and P<sub>i</sub> requiring pathways of

conventional glycolysis and mitochondrial respiration (Rychter *et al.*, 1992; Theodorou & Plaxton, 1993). In nodules, the subsequent increased engagement of an alternative glycolytic route at a low  $P_i$  concentration, most notably PEP metabolism via PEPc, is thought to contribute to the elevated malate levels typical for nodules (Colebatch *et al.*, 2004; Le Roux *et al.*, 2006). Previous work on shorter-term P deficiency in nodules found no engagement of this PEPc-bypass, when cellular  $P_i$  levels were maintained for 14 days of P starvation (Le Roux *et al.*, 2006). However, the  $P_i$  decline in nodules under 25d of P starvation in the present study was correlated with an increase in PEP metabolism via PEPc.



The increase in oxygen consumption with decreasing nutritional P supply concurs with the respiratory responses of previous work on P deficient plants (Usuda & Shimogawara, 1993; Bingham & Farrar, 1989). This was mainly ascribed to  $O_2$  consumption being mediated via the non-phosphorylating alternative pathway (Rychter *et al.*, 1992). In addition, P deficiency may upset the favorable energy status of the plant cell fraction where N assimilation into amino acids and ureides occur (Sa & Israel, 1991; Israel, 1993).

In this regard, the present study found that nodular enzymes associated with N metabolism (GS/GOGAT, AAT, AS) had decreased activities under LP conditions, which resulted in lower N assimilation. Despite the current study's focus on amino acid exporting legumes, a similar down-regulation of similar N assimilation enzymes, has previously been reported for the ureide exporting *Phaseolus vulgaris* under LP conditions (Olivera *et al.*, 2004). Although



Almeida *et al.*, (2000), found that nitrogenase activity undergoes regulatory inhibition by an N feedback mechanism under LP conditions, the present study's decline in total amino acid and  $\text{NH}_4^+$  concentrations were not associated with this predicted relief of the inhibition of nitrogen fixation at LP. Furthermore, it was found that accumulation of specific amino acids (e.g. asparagine), rather than changes in total amino acids could elicit a decline in specific nitrogenase activity (Almeida *et al.*, 2000).

The nodule metabolite levels and enzyme activities strongly suggest that LP nodules have an increased C flux towards organic acids. Since nodules have a high requirement for dark  $\text{CO}_2$  fixation (Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990), the enhanced uptake and assimilation of dark  $\text{CO}_2$  under P deficiency and the subsequent preferential incorporation into organic acids, concurs with the engagement of the P-deficient bypass in plant cells (Theodorou & Plaxton, 1993). The PEP-derived organic acids, particularly malate, are widely accepted to be the primary source of C for bacteroids (Rosendahl *et al.*, 1990; Kaur & Singh, 1999). In the present study, this shift in C metabolism towards organic acid synthesis was at the expense of C assimilation into amino acids. Therefore, it is proposed here that altered organic acid metabolism may account for the reported decline in  $\text{N}_2$  fixation in this study. In particular, the increase in malate synthesis and dark  $\text{CO}_2$  incorporation into malate can further substantiate this assertion. This increased malate concentration in nodules of plants grown at LP is matched by the increase in MDH activities of these nodules. Elevated malate concentrations at LP may have been inhibitory to  $\text{N}_2$  fixation.

*In vitro* studies have demonstrated that even modest increases (0.5 to 2 mM) in malate supply to isolated bacteroids could heavily impede N<sub>2</sub> fixation (Bergersen & Turner, 1990; 1993). This effect on N<sub>2</sub> fixation was only reversed once substrate levels were lowered in isolated bacteroids (Bergersen & Turner, 1990; 1993). Although there has been a study on whole nodules to resolve the malate concentrations between the cytosolic and bacteroid components, these findings were not implicated in N<sub>2</sub> fixation (Rosendahl *et al.* 1990).

In conclusion, the engagement of the PEPc bypass route in P<sub>i</sub>-limited nodules may ensure the continuation of respiration but the preferential shift of PEPc-derived C to organic acid synthesis may have resulted in malate accumulation to inhibit symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> fixation. Furthermore, it is clear that more detailed information is required on the malate distribution in various nodular tissues in order to assess the relationship between malate levels and N<sub>2</sub> fixation.

## **5.6 Acknowledgements**

The authors are grateful to the National Research Foundation (NRF) for financial support of this work. We also wish to acknowledge the University of the Western Cape and Stellenbosch University for use of facilities. We thank Ms Laurianne van der Merwe for technical assistance.



## 5.6 References

Almeida JPF, Hartwig UA, Frehner M, Nösberger J, Lüscher A (2000) Evidence that P deficiency induces N feedback regulation of symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> fixation in white clover (*Trifolium repens* L.). *Journal of Experimental Botany* 51: 1289-1297.

Al-Niemi TS, Kahn ML, McDermott TR (1997) Phosphorus metabolism in the bean-*Rhizobium tropici* symbiosis. *Plant Physiology* 113: 1233-1242.

Al-Niemi TS, Kahn ML, McDermott TR (1998) Phosphorus uptake by bean nodules. *Plant and Soil* 198: 71-78.

Appels MA, Haaker H (1988) Identification of cytoplasmic nodule-associated forms of malate dehydrogenase involved in the symbiosis between *Rhizobium leguminosarum* and *Pisum sativum*. *European Journal of Biochemistry* 171: 515-522.

Atkins CA, Calvin DT (1971) Photosynthesis and CO<sub>2</sub> evolution by leaf discs: gas exchange, extraction, and ion-exchange fractionation of <sup>14</sup>C-labelled photosynthetic products. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 49: 1225-1234.

Bergersen FJ, Turner GL (1990) Bacteroids from soybean root nodules: respiration and N<sub>2</sub> fixation in flow chamber reactions with oxyleghaemoglobin. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B* 228: 296-320.

Bergersen FJ, Turner GL (1993) Effects of concentration of substrates supplied to N<sub>2</sub>-fixing soybean bacteroids in flow chamber experiments. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B* 251: 95-102.

Bingham IJ, Farrar JF (1989) Activity and capacity of respiratory pathways in barley roots deprived of inorganic nutrients. *Plant Physiology and Biochemistry* 27: 847-854.

Bradford MM (1976) A rapid and sensitive method for the quantitation of microgram quantities of protein utilising the principle of protein-dye binding. *Analytical Biochemistry* 72: 248-254.

Colebatch G, Desbrosses G, Ott T, Krusell L, Montanari O, Kloska S, Kopka J, Udvardi M (2004) Global changes in transcription orchestrate metabolic differentiation during symbiotic nitrogen fixation in *Lotus japonicus*. *Plant Journal* 39: 487-512.

Drevon J-J, Hartwig UA (1997) Phosphorus deficiency increases the argon-induced decline of nodule nitrogenase activity in soybean and alfalfa. *Planta* 201: 463-469.

Duff SMG, Moorhead GBG, Lefebvre DD, Plaxton WC (1989) Purification and characterisation of a phosphoenolpyruvate phosphatase from *Brassica nigra* suspension cells. *Plant Physiology* 90: 1275-1278.



Egli MA, Griffith SM, Miller SS, Anderson MP, Vance CP (1989) Nitrogen assimilating enzyme activities and enzyme protein during development and senescence of effective and plantgene-controlled ineffective alfalfa nodules. *Plant Physiology* 91: 898-904.

Høgh-Jensen H, Schjoerring JK, Soussana J-F (2002) The influence of phosphorus deficiency on growth and nitrogen fixation of white clover plants. *Annals of Botany* 90: 745-753.

Israel DW (1987) Investigation of the role of phosphorus in symbiotic dinitrogen fixation. *Plant Physiology* 84: 835-840.

Israel DW (1993) Symbiotic dinitrogen fixation and host-plant growth during development of and recovery from phosphorus deficiency. *Physiology Plantarum* 88: 294-300.

Jakobsen I (1985) The role of phosphorus in nitrogen fixation by young pea plants (*Pisum sativum*). *Physiologia Plantarum* 64: 190-196.

Kaur K, Singh R (1999) Sugar metabolism and partitioning in cytosol and bacteroid fractions of chickpea nodules. *Plant Physiology and Biochemistry* 37: 685-692.

Kouchi H, Yoneyama T (1986) Metabolism of [<sup>13</sup>C]-labeled photosynthate in plant cytosol and bacteroids of root nodules of *Glycine max*. *Physiologia Plantarum* 68: 238-244.

Le Roux MR, Ward CL, Botha FC and Valentine AJ (2006) The route of pyruvate synthesis under P<sub>i</sub> starvation in legume root systems. *New Phytologist* 169: 399-408.

McRae DG, Miller RW, Berndt WB, Joy K (1989) Transport of C<sub>4</sub> dicarboxylates and amino acids by *Rhizobium meliloti* bacteroids. *Molecular Plant-Microbe Interactions* 2: 273-278.

Mortimer PE, Archer E, Valentine AJ (2005) Mycorrhizal C costs and nutritional benefits in developing grapevines. *Mycorrhiza* 15: 159-165.

Ocaña A, Del Pilar Cordovilla M, Ligeró F, Lluch C (1996) Phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase in root nodules of *Vicia faba*: partial purification and properties. *Physiologia Plantarum* 97: 724-730.

Olivera M, Tejera N, Iribarne C, Ocaña A, Lluch C (2004) Growth, nitrogen fixation and ammonium assimilation in common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*): effect of phosphorus. *Physiologia Plantarum* 121: 498-505.

Parsons R, Baker A (1996) Cycling of amino compounds in symbiotic lupin. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 47: 421-429.



Peng S, Eissenstat DM, Graham JH, Williams K, Hodge NC (1993) Growth depression in mycorrhizal citrus at high phosphorus supply. I. Analysis of carbon costs. *Plant Physiology* 101: 1063-1088.

Plaxton WC (1996) The organization and regulation of plant glycolysis. *Annual Reviews of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* 47: 185-214.

Ribet J, Drevon J-J (1995) Increase in permeability to oxygen and in oxygen uptake of soybean nodules under limiting phosphorus nutrition. *Physiologia Plantarum* 94: 298-304.

Rosen H (1957) A modified ninhydrin colorimetric analysis for amino acids. *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.* 67: 10-15.

Rosendahl L, Vance CP, Pedersen WB (1990) Products of dark CO<sub>2</sub> fixation in pea root nodules support bacteroid metabolism. *Plant Physiology* 93: 12-19.

Rychter AM, Mikulska M (1990) The relationship between phosphate status and cyanide-resistant respiration in bean roots. *Physiologia Plantarum* 79: 663-667.

Rychter AM, Chauveau M, Bomsel JL, Lance C (1992) The effect of phosphate deficiency on mitochondrial activity and adenylate levels in bean roots. *Plant Physiology* 84: 80-86.

Rychter AM, Randall DD (1994) The effect of phosphate deficiency on carbohydrate metabolism in bean roots. *Physiologia Plantarum* 91: 383-388.

Sa T-M, Israel DW (1991) Energy status and functioning of phosphorus-deficient soybean nodules. *Plant Physiology* 97: 928-935.

Sieger SM, Kristensen BK, Robson CA, Amirsadeghi S, Eng EWY, Abdel-Mesih A, Moller IM, Vanlerberghe GC (2005) The role of alternative oxidase in modulating carbon use efficiency and growth during macronutrient stress in tobacco cells. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 56: 1499-1515.

Smith AM (1985) Capacity for fermentation in roots and *Rhizobium* nodules of *Pisum sativum* L. *Planta* 166: 264-270.

Solorzano L (1969) Determination of ammonium in natural waters by the phenol-hypochlorite method. *Limnology and Oceanography* 14: 799-801.

Streeter JG (1987) Carbohydrate, organic acid and amino acid composition of bacteroids and cytosol from soybean nodules. *Advances in Botanical Research* 18: 129-187.



Tang C, Hinsinger P, Drevon, JJ, Jaillard B (2001) Phosphorus deficiency impairs early nodule functioning and enhances proton release in roots of *Medicago truncatula* L. *Annals of Botany* 88: 131-138.

Theodorou ME, Plaxton WC (1993) Metabolic adaptation of plant respiration to nutritional phosphate deprivation. *Plant Physiology* 101: 339-334.

Usuda H, Shimogawara K (1993) Phosphate deficiency in maize. IV. Changes in amounts of sucrose phosphate synthase during the course of phosphate deprivation. *Plant and Cell Physiology* 34: 767-770.

Vadez V, Beck DP, Lasso JH, Drevon J-J (1996) Utilization of the acetylene reduction assay to screen for tolerance of symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> fixation to limiting P nutrition in common bean. *Physiologia Plantarum* 99: 227-232.

Vance CP, Heichel GH (1991) Carbon in N<sub>2</sub> fixation: limitation or exquisite adaptation. *Annual Review Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* 42: 373-392.

Vessey JK (1994) Measurement of nitrogenase activity in legume root nodules: in defense of the acetylene reduction assay. *Plant and Soil* 158: 151-162.

Wanke M, Ciereszko I, Podbickowska M, Rychter AM (1998) Response to phosphate deficiency in bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.). Respiratory

metabolism, sugar localization and changes in ultrastructure of bean root cells.

*Annals of Botany* 82: 809-818.

Williams K, Percival F, Merino J, Mooney HA (1987) Estimation of tissue construction cost from heat of combustion and organic nitrogen content. *Plant Cell and Environment* 10: 725-734.



UNIVERSITY *of the*  
WESTERN CAPE



# CHAPTER 6



**Physiological responses to and the recovery  
from P deficiency in *Lupinus angustifolius***

UNIVERSITY of the  
WESTERN CAPE

## 6.1 Summary

- The effects of P deficiency on growth, N<sub>2</sub> fixation and photosynthesis in nodulated lupins (*Lupinus angustifolius* var. *Tanjil*) developing and recovering from P deficiency were investigated.
- Lupins were grown in pots on a non-limiting P (2 mM P; HP) supply for three weeks. A subset of these HP plants was supplemented with a low phosphorus (2 μM P; LP) nutrient solution, whereas the rest served as HP control plants for a further 24 days. Two weeks after P treatments were induced in the LP plants, a subset of these were re-supplied with a HP solution (with the rest of the plants serving as P deficient controls) to their medium and the recovery responses evaluated after ten days.
- LP arrested nodule growth and caused a substantial decline in %Ndfa. Similarly, the leaf weight ratio (LWR) decreased, but the rate of photosynthesis per unit specific leaf mass or area was unaffected by LP. Respiratory costs of nodulated roots were diverted to growth respiration at the expense of maintenance respiration in nodulated roots under LP. All the parameters that showed a decrease under LP, responded positively to P re-supply and recovered to HP control levels.
- Thus, LP impairs the functions associated with nodule growth and metabolism. Physiological adaptations could involve a switch to a highly efficient nodule respiratory metabolism related to the optimisation of N<sub>2</sub> fixation under LP.

**Key words:** *Lupins*, legumes, P deficiency, N<sub>2</sub> fixation; PUE, root nodules, respiration, maintenance, growth



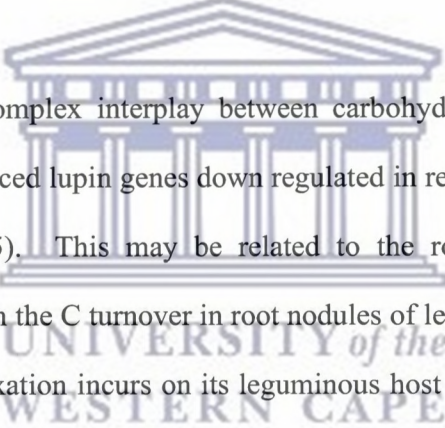
## 6.2 Introduction

*Lupinus* is a temperate legume with great agronomic potential due to the high protein content of its seeds and its positive contribution to restoring depleted soils through N enrichment (Fernández-Pascual *et al.*, 2007). Lupins appear to have certain key morphological and physiological adaptations that make them suitable for nutrient poor soils (Schulze *et al.*, 2006). This may confer tolerance to several abiotic stresses, amongst which is a high tolerance to prolonged periods of P stress (Fernández-Pascual *et al.*, 2007; Schulze *et al.*, 2006).

The model lupin species that has been used to address issues related to modifications of root physiology and biochemistry under P deficiency, is white lupin (*Lupinus albus*). White lupin develops proteoid (cluster) roots, which are positively correlated with the excretion of high amounts of organic acids, in response to P deficiency (Johnson *et al.*, 1996; Keerthisinghe *et al.*, 1998). However, this adaptation does not make it easy to separate the physiological responses of cluster roots to P deficiency from those of nodulated root phenomena, which might be very different. In this regard, it might be more desirable to use a lupin species that does not form cluster roots and ascertain P effects on root nodule physiology independently of any other contributing factors.

Phosphate deficiency is known to induce numerous changes in plant metabolism and its importance may encompass parameters related to C economy and photosynthetic activity (Freeden *et al.*, 1989; Liao *et al.*, 1999;

Nielsen *et al.*, 2001). Translocation of photosynthate to the nodules was severely compromised under P deficiency (Jakobsen, 1985). However, how C limitation impacts on N<sub>2</sub> fixation remains largely unknown and numerous authors have proposed this to be a secondary response related to O<sub>2</sub> permeability effects (Vance & Heichel, 1991; Hartwig, 1998; Schulze, 2004). Indeed, some of these studies describe the down regulation of N<sub>2</sub> fixation to occur in advance of any changes in host plant growth and glycolytic flux (Israel, 1993; Curioni *et al.*, 1999). Carbon resources acquired by plants ultimately have various fates, including construction of new plant tissue, utilization in respiration and export to the rhizosphere.



There exists a complex interplay between carbohydrate and P metabolism, with P stress induced lupin genes down regulated in response to sugar addition (Liu *et al.*, 2005). This may be related to the role of P in the energy metabolism and in the C turnover in root nodules of leguminous plants. The C burden that N<sub>2</sub> fixation incurs on its leguminous host may well be high under non-stressed conditions given the energy-intensive nature of the symbiosis. However, it could be further exacerbated by mineral stress, such as P deficiency. The partners in the symbiosis are required to optimise their energy needs in response to P deficiency. Thus, respiration that drives the energy metabolism of nodulated roots will be modulated to sustain a highly efficient symbiosis. In this regard, root nodule CO<sub>2</sub> fixation is of pivotal importance for N<sub>2</sub> fixation in legume-rhizobia symbioses (Fischinger & Schulze, 2010). Nodules can re-fix some of the respired C through the expression of enzymes such as phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase (PEPc; EC 4.1.1.31) and carbonic



anhydrase (CA; 4.2.1.1). These and other enzymes related to N and C metabolism, including other recycling mechanisms (e.g. H<sup>+</sup> uptake) in root nodules, may severely impact on C efficiency of root nodule symbiosis and make experimental analyses of respiratory costs difficult at best. All these factors may account for the highly variable values of C expenditure for N<sub>2</sub> fixation for a range of legume hosts in literature.

Furthermore, differences in belowground C allocation, between root respiration and growth may account for P efficient metabolism of varying P efficient genotypes of non-symbiotic common bean plants (Nielsen *et al.*, 2001). Therefore, better performances by certain plants may be related to their ability to amend growth with low yields or alternatively their capacity to utilize absorbed P more effectively in the production of biomass, so-called phosphate use efficiency (PUE) (Vadéz *et al.*, 1999). The plant may expend in excess of 20% of the C required via photosynthesis in root respiration under optimal conditions (Lambers *et al.*, 1996). Various studies highlight how this respiratory burden may be altered for legumes dependent on root symbiosis (Warembourg *et al.*, 1982; Warembourg & Roumet, 1989; Walsh *et al.*, 1992; Schulze *et al.*, 1994). However, none of these consider what role P limitation in the growth medium plays in relation to maximizing symbiotic efficiency in this regard. Under such conditions, the way in which plants are able to govern how carbohydrates are being allocated to the various pathways related to optimising metabolic energy synthesis is paramount to their survival (Nielsen *et al.*, 2001). Root respiration can be partitioned into costs for growth and maintenance. Growth respiration is defined as the amount of carbohydrates

respired in processes related to a net gain in plant biomass and includes ATP production and reductant for biosynthetic processes, transport processes and nutrient uptake and reduction (Van Iersel & Seymour, 2000). In turn, maintenance respiration is the respiration required to provide energy for all plant processes, which do not result in a net accumulation of plant dry matter (Peng *et al.*, 1993; Van Iersel & Seymour, 2000).

This study aimed to ascertain responses of symbiotic nitrogen fixation (SNF) to P deficiency in the growth medium and the associated partitioning of photosynthetic and respiratory carbon metabolism under prolonged P deficiency conditions (24 d) imposed in this study. The recovery responses to P re-supply (14 d) was also assessed. This may have implications for agriculture in marginal soils.

### **6.3 Materials and methods**

#### **6.3.1 Plant growth conditions**

Seeds of *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil) were germinated in vermiculite and were inoculated with a rhizobial inoculum containing *Bradyrhizobium* sp. (*Lupinus*) bacteria at planting. Seeds of lupins were coated in a saturated sucrose solution and 1 g of inoculum / 80 seeds was added and mixed. Seed germination was carried out in a controlled environment with the range of midday irradiances between 500 and 670  $\mu\text{mol. m}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$  and the average day/night temperatures and humidities were 21/16 °C and 34/73%, respectively.



Subsequent to the first visible signs of nodulation ( $\approx 7$  d) seedlings were transferred to pots (30 × 30 mm) (one plant per pot) containing silica sand. Plants were watered daily with 300 ml of Long Ashton solution modified to contain a high phosphorus (HP; 2 mM P) solution. The nutrient solution consisted of no N, 2 mM phosphorus and 0.05 mM MES [2-(*N*-morpholino) ethane-sulfonic acid] buffer. The pH of the solution was appropriately adjusted with either 1 mM HCl or 1 mM NaOH to 5.8 prior to watering. A switch to a low phosphorus (LP; 2 $\mu$ M) treatment started once nodules were established and of adequate size, usually in the third or fourth week of growth. After 14 d of growth of the plants on the LP treatment, a subset of these plants were re-supplied with a HP solution, constituting the re-feed treatment, whereas the rest of the plants were either kept at LP or HP and served as plants under prolonged (i.e. 24 d) of P-deficiency and P-sufficient control treatments, respectively. A group of plants were harvested prior to inducing any of the treatments and served as a reference to assess variation in P treatments from the point of measurement. For the groups of plants from HP and LP treatments, measurements started at the point of P withdrawal and measurements were carried out once a week for a 3-week period. In the case of the re-feed treatment, measurements were only made once and that was at the final harvest after 24 d. The LP plants at 14 d served as the point of departure for plants that were re-supplied with HP and on which calculations were based.

### **6.3.2 *Harvesting and nutrient analysis***

Harvest intervals occurred at 14 and 24 days after P deficiency was induced. Upon harvesting the plants ( $n = 4$ ) were separated into roots, nodules, stems and leaves. The harvested material was dried at 72 °C for 48 h to a constant weight and dry weights (DW) were recorded. The dried plant material was milled using a 0.5 mm mesh (Arthur H Thomas, California, USA). The milled samples were analyzed for their respective C, N and P concentrations, by a commercial laboratory, using inductively coupled mass spectrometry (ICP-MS) and a LECO-nitrogen analyzer with suitable standards (BemLab, De Beers Rd, Somerset West, South Africa).

### **6.3.3 *Measurements of CO<sub>2</sub> assimilation***

All CO<sub>2</sub> assimilation measurements were conducted at an ambient leaf temperature, using a portable infrared gas analyzer (IRGA; LCA-Pro, ADC, Herts SG12 9TA, England). The IRGA comprised of a photosynthetic leaf chamber featuring light, temperature and humidity control. Humidity, in the leaf chamber was maintained at ambient conditions. Photosynthetic rates were measured at an irradiance of 1200  $\mu\text{mol photons. m}^{-2}. \text{s}^{-1}$ , derived beforehand from light response curves. The youngest fully expanded leaves for each plant were used for photosynthetic determinations.

The portable infrared gas analyzer was also used to measure the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> released from the belowground whole root systems. The analyzer was fitted with an adaptable soil hood and the total root respiration was measured



over a period of 5 min at 15 s intervals. A constant flow rate in the cuvette space was maintained at 300 ml. min<sup>-1</sup>.

#### 6.3.4 Calculations of $\delta^{15}\text{N}$

The  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  analyses were carried out at the Archeometry Department, University of Cape Town. The isotopic ratio of  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  was calculated as  $\delta = 1000\text{‰} [R_{\text{sample}}/R_{\text{standard}}]$ , where R is the molar ratio of the heavier to the lighter isotope of the sample with standards as defined by Farquhar *et al.*, (1989). The oven-dried plant components were milled in a Wiley mill using a 0.5 mm mesh (Arthur H Thomas, California, USA). Between 2.1 and 2.2 mg of each sample was weighed into 8 mm by 5 mm tin capsules (Elemental Microanalysis Ltd., Devon, U.K.) on a Sartorius microbalance (Goettingen, Germany). The samples were then combusted in a Fisons NA 1500 (Series 2) CHN analyser (Fisons Instruments SpA, Milan, Italy). The  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  values for the nitrogen gases released were determined on a Finnigan Matt 252 mass spectrometer (Finnigan MAT GmbH, Bremen, Germany), which was connected to a CHN analyser by a Finnigan MAT Conflo control unit. Three standards were used to correct the samples for machine drift; two in-house standards (Merck Gel and Nasturtium) and one IAEA (International Atomic Energy Agency) standard-(NH<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  natural abundance of the legumes was corrected for the seed N, according to Boddey *et al.*, (1995):

$$\delta^{15}\text{N enrichment (Seed corrected)} = \frac{((\text{plant N} \times \delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{plant}}) - (\text{seed N} \times P_s \times \delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{seed}}))}{(\text{plant N} - \text{seed N})}$$

Where plant N and seed N represent the respective N concentrations of the plant and seed,  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  plant and  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  seed represent the respective  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  values of the plant and seed and Ps is the proportion of the seed N that was assimilated by the legume.

The seed corrected  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  values (Boddey *et al.* 1995) were used to determine the percentage N derived from the atmosphere (%Ndfa). Ndfa was calculated according to Shearer & Kohl (1986):

$$\%Ndfa = 100 * ((\delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{reference plant}} - \delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{legume}}) / (\delta^{15}\text{N}_{\text{reference plant}} - B))$$

Where  $B$  is the  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  natural abundance of the N derived from biological N fixation of the above-ground tissue of *Lens vulgaris*, grown in a N free culture, according to Shearer & Kohl (1986). The  $B$ -value of *Lens vulgaris* was determined as -0.76‰.

### 6.3.5 C costs determinations

Tissue construction costs (mmol C. g<sup>-1</sup> DW) were calculated according to Mortimer *et al.*, (2005).  $C_w = [C + (kN/14) \times (180/24)](1/0.89)(6\ 000/180)$ , where  $C_w$  is the construction costs of the tissue (mmol C. g<sup>-1</sup> DW),  $C$  is the carbon concentration (mmol C. g<sup>-1</sup> DW),  $k$  is the reduction state of the N substrate ( $\text{NH}_4^+$ , derived from  $\text{N}_2$  reduction, was taken as the source of N for amino acid synthesis, therefore  $k$  is -3) and  $N$  is the organic nitrogen content of the tissue (g. g<sup>-1</sup> DW). The constant (1/0.89) represents the fraction of the



construction cost that provides reductant that is not incorporated into biomass (Williams *et al.*, 1987; Peng *et al.*, 1993) and (6 000/180) converts units of g glucose per g<sup>-1</sup> DW to mmol C. g<sup>-1</sup> DW. Growth respiration (mmol CO<sub>2</sub>. g<sup>-1</sup> DW) representing the C respired for the biosynthesis of new tissue was calculated according to Peng *et al.*, (1993).

The specific P utilization rate (SPUR) (g DW. mg<sup>-1</sup> P. d<sup>-1</sup>) is a measure of the DW gained for the P taken up by the roots (Nielsen *et al.*, 2001) over the time interval (t<sub>1</sub> to t<sub>2</sub>) and is described by the equation:

$$\text{SPUR} = (W_2 - W_1) / (t_2 - t_1) \times (\log_e M_2 - \log_e M_1) / (M_2 - M_1)$$

Where M is the P content of the roots and W is the nodulated root DW.

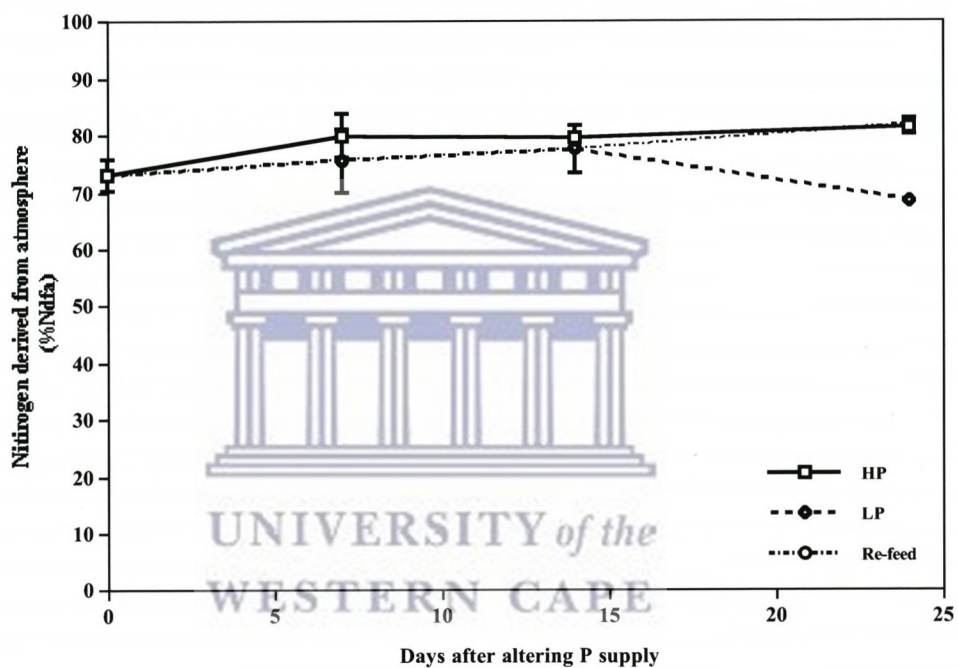
#### 6.3.6 Statistical analysis

Averages for the data are means of separate replicates ( $n = 4$ ). All data were analysed by single analysis of variance (ANOVA) (SuperAnova, Statsgraphics Version 7, 1993, Statsgraphics Corporation, USA). All data were then subjected to a post-hoc Student Newman Kuehls (SNK) multiple range test ( $P \leq 0.05$ ) to determine significant differences, which are indicated by different letters.

## 6.4 Results

### 6.4.1 Symbiotic nitrogen fixation and dry matter yield

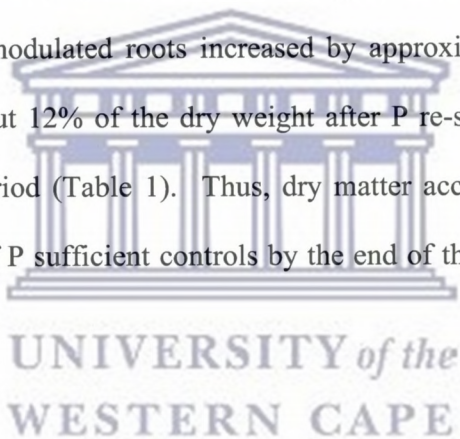
Judging from the %Ndfa, legume hosts under prolonged LP showed a decline of about 16% in their fixation capacity compared with HP controls (Fig 1). During the 10 d of P re-supply to the medium of plants formerly P starved, such plants regained all of this capacity, reaching a %Ndfa similar to the HP controls (Fig. 1).



**Figure 1:** The percentage nitrogen derived from the atmosphere (%Ndfa) of soil grown nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil) plants during recovery from and onset of phosphorus deficiency. Plants were supplemented twice weekly over the course of 24 d with a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing either 2 mM P (HP) or 2  $\mu$ M P (LP). For the P re-feed treatment (Re-feed), half of the plants that were formerly given a LP solution were re-supplied with a HP solution at 14 d. The other half was kept at LP and served as P-deficient plants. These were compared with P sufficient plants, which remained at HP for the duration of the experiment. Error bars denote the standard error ( $n = 4$ ).



In general, plant growth was unaffected by prolonged P deficient conditions (Table 1). Shoot growth was largely unaffected by P treatment but did manifest an increase in construction costs ( $W_c$ ) and growth respiration per unit shoot dry weight ( $RG_w$ ), under LP conditions (Table 1). Nodulated roots increased their relative growth rate (RGR) by 56% under prolonged P deficient conditions imposed in this study (Table 1). Thus, plants subjected to LP, responded typically by increasing root biomass at the expense of shoot biomass, with a concomitant higher root:shoot ratio (Table 1). Nodulated root relative growth rate was restored to levels resembling that of P sufficient controls after P was re-introduced to the growth medium (Table 1). Dry matter yield of nodulated roots increased by approximately 32% and plants gained only about 12% of the dry weight after P re-supply at the end of the experimental period (Table 1). Thus, dry matter accumulation was still not back to levels of P sufficient controls by the end of the 10 d re-supply period (Table 1).



Nodule biomass appeared to have been more responsive to P withdrawal from the medium, than either shoots or roots (Table 2). Various nodule parameters, i.e. nodule weight, mean nodule mass, nodule number, normalised nodule weight and the percentage that nodule weight contributed to the root system, decreased after 24 d of LP conditions (Table 2). However, these same parameters, with the exception of nodule number, responded rapidly (within 10 d) and recovered to levels similar to HP controls after P was re-introduced into the medium at 14 d of growth on LP (Table 2).

**Table 1:** Plant biomass parameters of soil grown nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil) plants during recovery from and onset of phosphorus deficiency. Plants were supplemented twice weekly over the course of 24 d with a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing either 2 mM P (HP) or 2  $\mu$ M P (LP). For the P re-feed treatment, half of the plants that were formerly given a LP solution were re-supplied with a HP solution at 14 d. The other half was kept at LP and served as P-deficient plants. These were compared with P sufficient plants, which remained at HP for the duration of the experiment. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

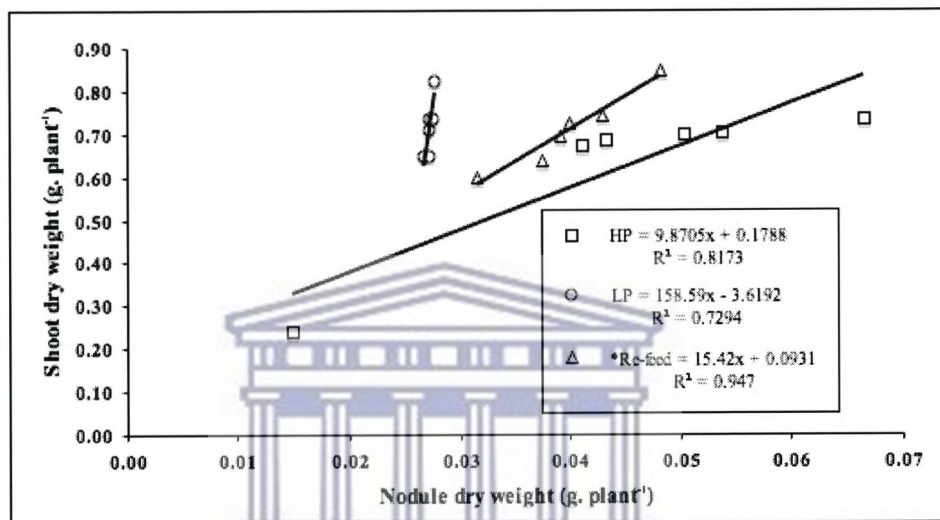
| Parameters  | Treatments          |                     |                     |
|---|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
|   | HP                  | LP                  | Re-feed             |
| <b>Biomass (g. plant<sup>-1</sup>)</b>                              |                     |                     |                     |
| Plant DW (g)  | 0.84 $\pm$ 0.07 a   | 0.97 $\pm$ 0.02 a   | 0.88 $\pm$ 0.11 a   |
| Shoot DW (g)  | 0.70 $\pm$ 0.02 a   | 0.71 $\pm$ 0.06 a   | 0.69 $\pm$ 0.08 a   |
| Root DW (g)   | 0.15 $\pm$ 0.01 a   | 0.27 $\pm$ 0.01 c   | 0.22 $\pm$ 0.02 b   |
| Root (including nodules) : Shoot                                    | 0.29 $\pm$ 0.01 a   | 0.43 $\pm$ 0.04 c   | 0.38 $\pm$ 0.01 b   |
| <b>Shoot growth</b>   |                     |                     |                     |
| Relative growth rate (RGR) (mg. g <sup>-1</sup> . d <sup>-1</sup> ) | 173.96 $\pm$ 0.01 a | 176.62 $\pm$ 0.02 a | 179.26 $\pm$ 0.03 a |
| Construction costs (W <sub>c</sub> ) (mmol C. g <sup>-1</sup> DW)   | 229.99 $\pm$ 7.22 a | 261.71 $\pm$ 5.14 b | 234.91 $\pm$ 5.16 a |
| Growth respiration (RG <sub>w</sub> ) (mmol C. g <sup>-1</sup> DW)  | 214.86 $\pm$ 4.57 a | 237.03 $\pm$ 3.93 b | 217.68 $\pm$ 6.82 a |
| <b>Nodulated root growth</b>  |                     |                     |                     |
| Relative growth rate (RGR) (mg. g <sup>-1</sup> . d <sup>-1</sup> ) | 24.91 $\pm$ 0.01 a  | 57.27 $\pm$ 0.01 b  | 30.94 $\pm$ 0.02 a  |
| Construction costs (W <sub>c</sub> ) (mmol C. g <sup>-1</sup> DW)   | 105.06 $\pm$ 8.28 b | 72.01 $\pm$ 10.88 a | 65.07 $\pm$ 2.52 a  |
| Growth respiration (RG <sub>w</sub> ) (mmol C. g <sup>-1</sup> DW)  | 44.05 $\pm$ 2.84 b  | 23.18 $\pm$ 5.29 a  | 23.43 $\pm$ 0.55 a  |



**Table 2:** Nodule biomass parameters and N-fixed per P concentration ( $\text{mg N} \cdot \text{g}^{-1} \text{DW} \cdot \text{mg}^{-1} \text{P}$ ) or per nodule DW ( $\text{mg N} \cdot \text{g}^{-1} \text{DW}$ ) of soil grown nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil) plants during recovery from and onset of phosphorus deficiency. Plants were supplemented twice weekly over the course of 24 d with a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing either 2 mM P (HP) or 2  $\mu\text{M}$  P (LP). For the P re-feed treatment, half of the plants that were formerly given a LP solution were re-supplied with a HP solution at 14 d. The other half was kept at LP and served as P-deficient plants. These were compared with P sufficient plants, which remained at HP for the duration of the experiment. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

| Nodule parameters  | Treatments          |                    |                    |
|--|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
|  | HP                  | LP                 | Re-feed            |
| Nodule DW ( $\text{mg} \cdot \text{plant}^{-1}$ )                    | 50.23 $\pm$ 8.15 b  | 27.29 $\pm$ 0.31 a | 39.06 $\pm$ 4.86 b |
| Mean nodule mass (mg)  | 4.44 $\pm$ 1.16 b   | 1.10 $\pm$ 0.09 a  | 2.65 $\pm$ 0.29 b  |
| Normalised nodule weight ( $\text{mg} \cdot \text{g}^{-1}$ shoot DW) | 72.37 $\pm$ 36.03 b | 39.15 $\pm$ 3.03 a | 56.33 $\pm$ 3.76 b |
| Nodule weight per nodulated root system (%)                          | 24.71 $\pm$ 4.40 c  | 9.07 $\pm$ 0.24 a  | 14.92 $\pm$ 1.28 b |
| Nodule number  | 12 $\pm$ 1.53 a     | 25 $\pm$ 1.73 b    | 29 $\pm$ 2.08 b    |
| <b>Root nodule use efficiencies</b>                                  |                     |                    |                    |
| N fixed / P concentration  | 13.87 $\pm$ 1.74 a  | 43.27 $\pm$ 1.22 b | 14.12 $\pm$ 1.97 a |
| N fixed / nodule DW  | 14.30 $\pm$ 0.91 a  | 20.90 $\pm$ 1.35 b | 14.90 $\pm$ 0.64 a |

In assessing whether N<sub>2</sub> fixation changed in accordance to P deficiency the shoot biomass was plotted as a function of its nodule biomass. The slope of the regression analysis, only if it was significantly correlated ( $R \geq 0.65$ ), is an indication of the utilisation efficiency for rhizobial symbiosis (EURS) (Kouas *et al.*, 2008).



**Figure 2:** The effect of P nutrition on utilisation efficiency for rhizobial symbiosis (EURS; the regression parameter of shoot as a function of nodule) of soil grown nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil). Plants were supplemented twice weekly over the course of 24 d with a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing either ( $\square$ ) 2 mM P (HP) or ( $\circ$ ) 2  $\mu$ M P (LP). For the P re-feed ( $\Delta$ ) treatment, half of the plants that were formerly given a LP solution were re-supplied with a HP solution at 14 d. The other half was kept at LP and served as P-deficient plants. These were compared with P sufficient plants, which remained at HP for the duration of the experiment. Data are individual values of plants harvested 24 d after P was altered to LP or maintained at HP, whereas it constituted 10 d after the P was introduced into the medium of formerly starved plants.

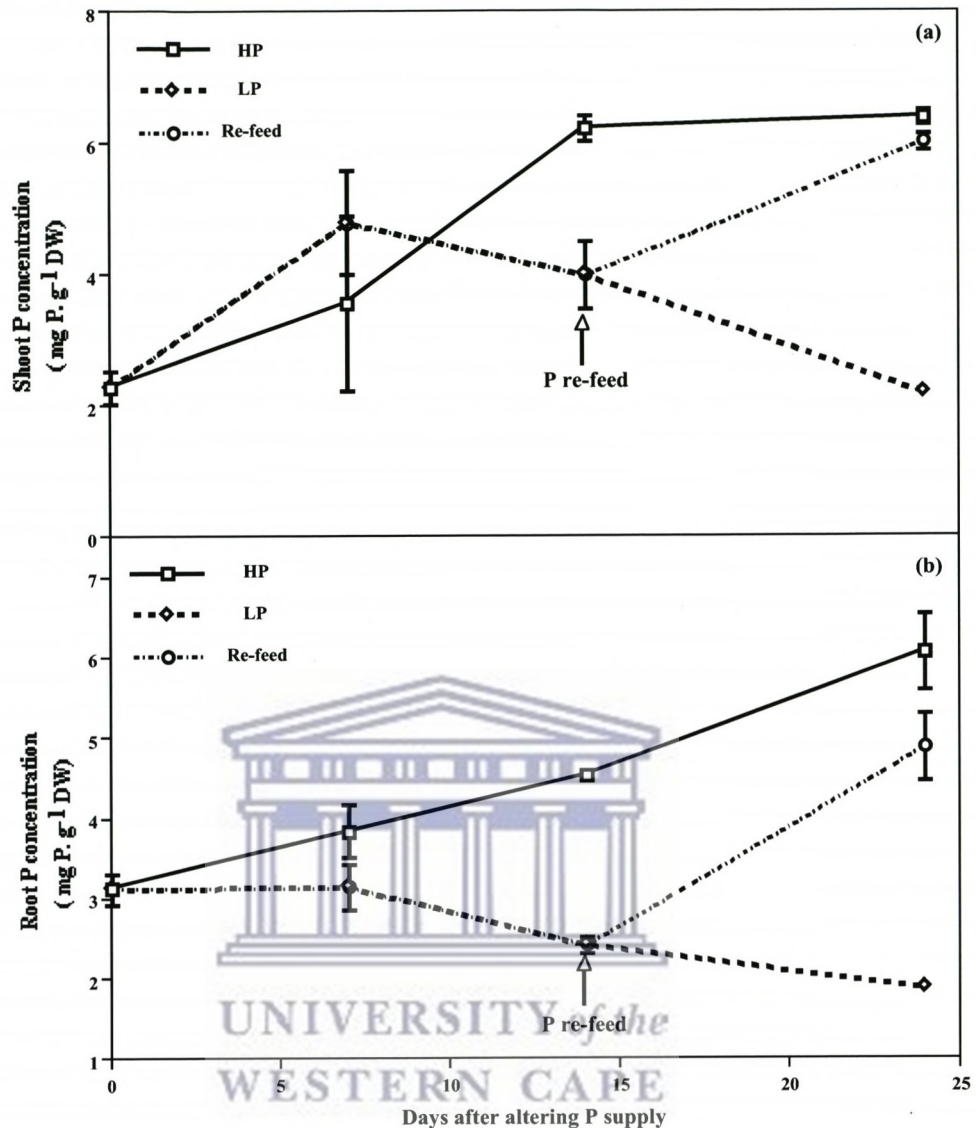
Here, a positive correlation was observed for all the treatments under review in this study (Fig. 2). The slope for plants subjected to LP was approximately 16 times higher at 159 g shoot DW (g nodule DW)<sup>-1</sup> than about 10 g shoot DW (g nodule DW)<sup>-1</sup> for plants with sufficient P. At P-re-supply of formerly



P starved plants, the EURS of plants returned to a level similar to that of HP plants of about  $19 \text{ g shoot DW (g nodule DW)}^{-1}$ . Thus under P deprived conditions, plants were able to increase their utilisation efficiency of the rhizobial symbiosis considerably for shoot growth (Fig. 2). This is confirmed by the increases in both  $W_c$  and  $RG_w$ , expressed per unit weight for shoots (Table 1). Both the  $W_c$  and the  $RG_w$  settled back to HP control levels after P re-supply (Table 1).

#### **6.4.2 Nutritional analyses and use efficiencies**

Shoot P concentrations increased above those of HP controls after the first 7 d of P deficiency, but declined steadily from this point onwards. After 14 d of P deficiency this trend was reversed and shoot P of LP plants had declined to levels significantly less than that of HP controls (Fig. 3a). By the end of the 24 d experimental period shoot P concentrations under LP had reached levels ( $\approx 2 \text{ mg P. g}^{-1} \text{ shoot DW}$ ) similar to what was recorded before any of the treatments were induced (Fig. 3a). At the same time, P accumulated to concentrations of  $6.4 \text{ mg P (g shoot DW)}^{-1}$  at HP, which constituted an increase of 64% from the time (day 24) that treatments were started to the time of final harvest (Fig. 3a). This was approximately 3 times higher than the concentrations recorded under LP conditions at 24 d (Fig. 3a). After P was re-introduced into the medium of plants under LP at 14 d, shoot P concentrations were increased to levels close to that for HP controls ( $4.9 \text{ mg P. g}^{-1} \text{ shoot DW}$ ) but were still markedly less (Fig. 3a).



**Figure 3** (a) The shoot total P concentration and (b) root total P concentration of soil grown nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil) plants during recovery from and onset of phosphorus deficiency. Plants were supplemented twice weekly over the course of 24 d with a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing either 2 mM P (HP) or 2  $\mu$ M P (LP). For the P re-feed treatment, half of the plants that were formerly given a LP solution were re-supplied with a HP solution at 14 d. The other half was kept at LP and served as P-deficient plants. These were compared with P sufficient plants, which remained at HP for the duration of the experiment. Error bars denote the standard error ( $n = 4$ ).

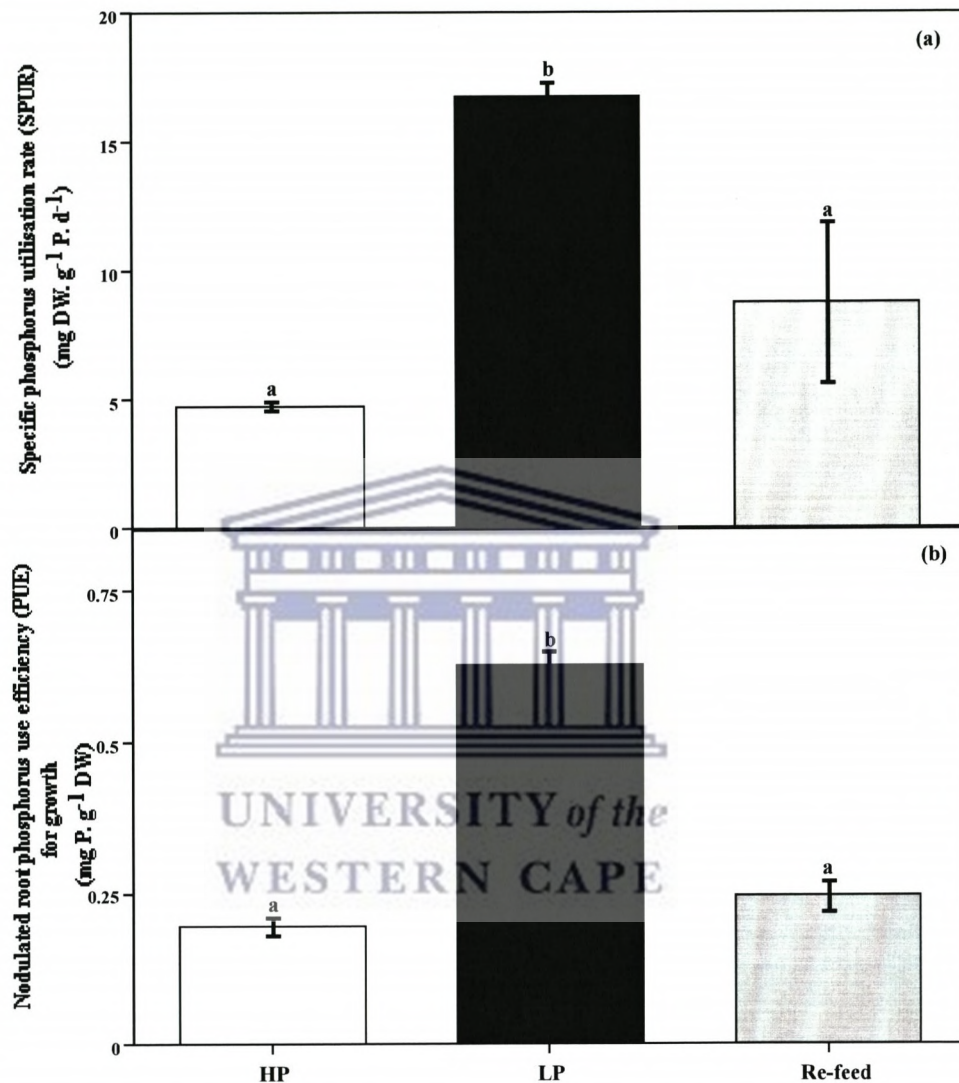


In contrast, nodulated roots responded quicker to P starvation, with marked declines in P concentrations already notable after 7 d of P withdrawal (Fig. 3b). Nodulated roots accumulated P steadily under HP, whereas the reverse was true for nodulated roots under LP, with a steady decline in P accumulation reaching P concentrations 74% less than those of HP control plants (Fig. 3b). After P re-supply nodulated root P concentrations recovered to levels 29% less than those of HP control plants (Fig. 3b). However, this was still markedly less than the P-sufficient controls by the end of the 24 d trial period.

The lower P concentration of roots under LP by day 24 was accompanied by a 90% decrease in specific phosphorus absorption rate (SPAR) (data not shown). The diminished capacity for P uptake resulted in higher P utilisation efficiencies though, as reflected in both the higher specific phosphate utilisation rate (SPUR) and the root nodule phosphorus use efficiency (PUE) for growth (Figs. 4a,b). The SPUR corresponded to a 3.5 fold increase over HP controls (Fig. 4a), whereas PUE represented a 3 fold increase (Fig. 4b). These increases in SPUR and PUE under LP were readily reversed and reached levels similar to that of P sufficient controls once P was re-supplied (Figs. 4a,b).

Nodulated roots increased the amount of N<sub>2</sub> fixed per concentration of P accumulated by 3-fold under LP at 24 d (Table 2). Therefore, for a lesser concentration of P accumulated in their roots (Fig. 3b), LP plants were more efficient at utilising N derived from symbiosis, compared with HP controls (Table 2). In addition, LP plants increased the amount of N<sub>2</sub> fixed per nodule

dry weight significantly compared with HP plants (Table 2). The amount of  $N_2$  fixed for both these aforementioned parameters declined to levels of HP controls after P re-supply (Table 2).

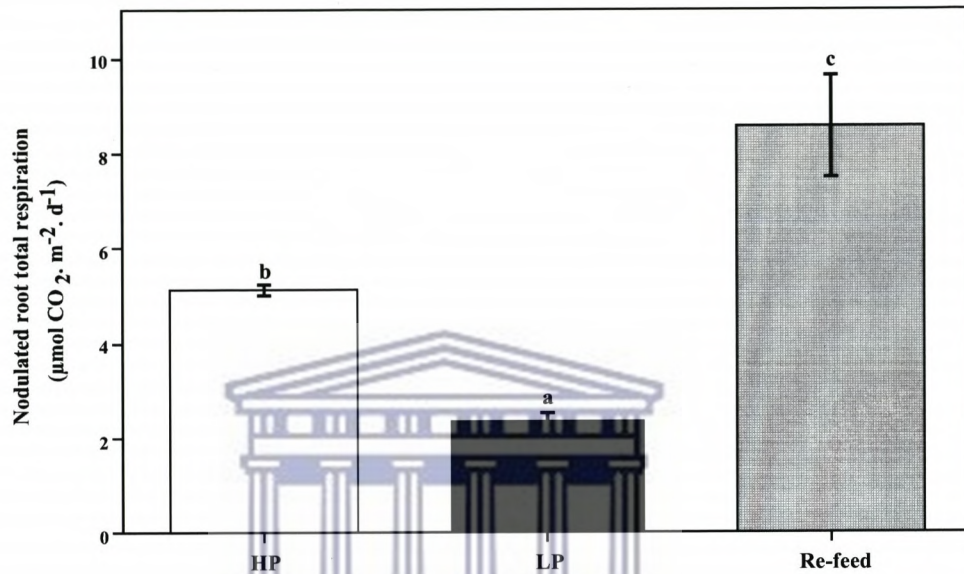


**Figure 4:** (a) The specific total phosphorus utilisation rate (SPUR) and (b) nodulated root total P use efficiency (PUE) for growth of soil grown nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil) plants during recovery from and onset of phosphorus deficiency. Plants were supplemented twice weekly over the course of 24 d with a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing either 2 mM P (HP) or 2  $\mu$ M P (LP). For the P re-feed treatment, half of the plants that were formerly given a LP solution were re-supplied with a HP solution at 14 d. The other half was kept at LP and served as P-deficient plants. These were compared with P sufficient plants, which remained at HP for the duration of the experiment. Values are presented as means with the error bars denoting the standard error ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).



### 6.4.3 Respiratory costs

There was also a 55% decline in total CO<sub>2</sub> evolution from nodulated roots as measured in LP soils (Fig. 5).



**Figure 5:** The respiration, measured as CO<sub>2</sub> evolution, in the root space of soil grown nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil) plants during recovery from and onset of phosphorus deficiency. Plants were supplemented twice weekly over the course of 24 d with a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing either 2 mM P (HP) or 2 µM P (LP). For the P re-feed treatment, half of the plants that were formerly given a LP solution were re-supplied with a HP solution at 14 d. The other half was kept at LP and served as P-deficient plants. These were compared with P sufficient plants, which remained at HP for the duration of the experiment. Values are presented as means with the error bars denoting the standard error ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

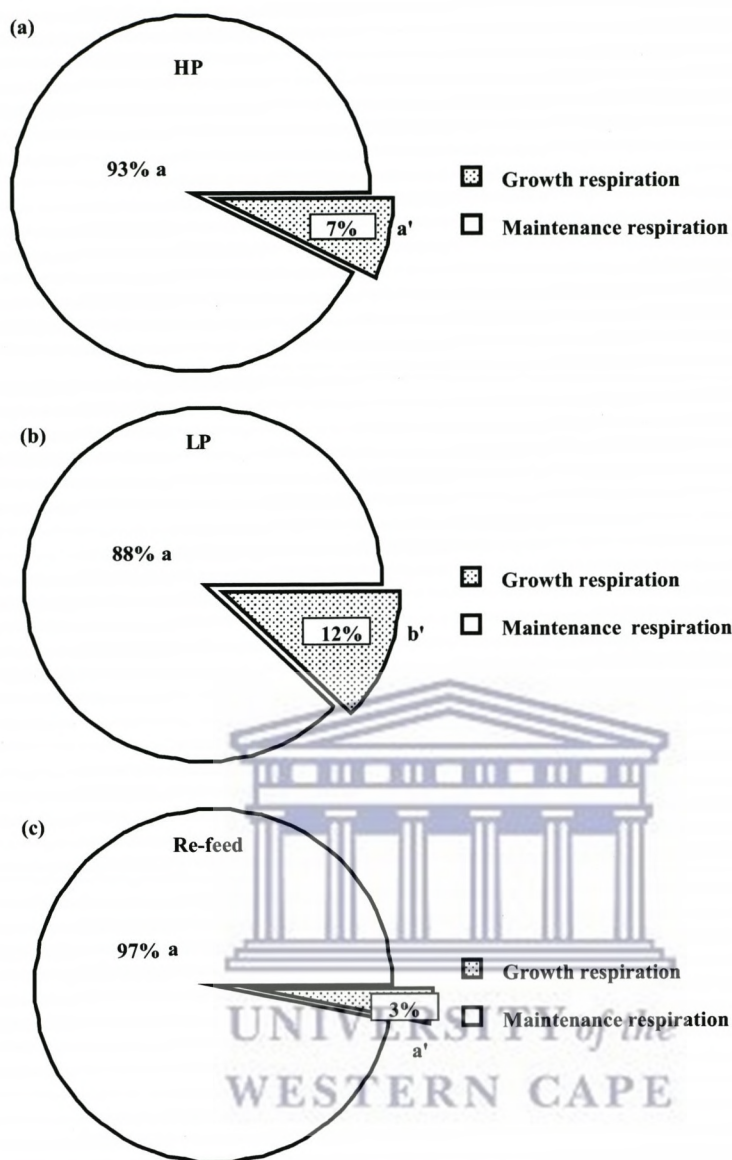
This was subsequently used to calculate the allocation between growth respiration (RG<sub>t</sub>) and maintenance respiration (RM<sub>t</sub>) over time. Root growth respiration (RG<sub>t</sub>), as assessed over the period of the experiment, was increased to 12% under LP compared with HP controls of 3% and after P re-supply respiratory costs settled back to levels corresponding to P sufficient controls

(Fig. 6a,b,c). Concurrently, the  $RM_t$ , i.e. respiration related to upholding ion gradients across membranes and the resynthesis of degraded organic compounds, was decreased under P limitation (Fig. 6b). Maintenance respiration always represented proportionately more of the total respiration than growth respiration at any of the given P regimes (Fig. 6).

#### **6.4.4 *Photosynthetic parameters***

Leaf dark respiration was unaffected by P supply over the assessment period in this study, remaining constant at approximately  $1.25 \mu\text{mol. mol. s}^{-1}$  (Table 3). Similarly there were no changes observed for any of the other leaf parameters related to photosynthetic capacity (e.g. specific leaf area, specific leaf mass, etc.) under the P limiting conditions imposed in this study. All these translated into no changes in the net photosynthetic rate ( $PN_{\text{max}}$ ) either expressed per specific leaf mass or per area of leaf under LP (Table 3). Likewise, the biomass-based net assimilation rate showed a similar trend (Table 3).





**Figure 6:** The growth and maintenance respiration as a percentage (%) of the total respiration of nodulated roots for (a) P sufficient (HP) control plants, (b) P deficient (LP) plants, and (c) P re-feed of formerly starved plants. Nodulated *Lupinus angustifolius* (cv. Tanjil) plants were soil grown and the recovery from and onset of phosphorus deficiency assessed. Plants were supplemented twice weekly over the course of 24 d with a N free Long Ashton nutrient solution containing either 2 mM P (HP) or 2  $\mu$ M P (LP). For the P re-feed treatment, half of the plants that were formerly given a LP solution were re-supplied with a HP solution at 14 d. The other half was kept at LP and served as P-deficient plants. These were compared with P sufficient plants, which remained at HP for the duration of the experiment. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Primed letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

**Table 3:** Leaf dark respiration ( $\mu\text{mol. mol}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ), LA ( $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{plant}^{-1}$ ), LAR ( $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{g}^{-1}$ ), SLA ( $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{g}^{-1}$ ), SLM ( $\text{g} \cdot \text{g}^{-1}$ ), LWR ( $\text{g} \cdot \text{g}^{-1}$ ), LER ( $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{day}^{-1}$ ), NAR ( $\text{g} \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{day}^{-1}$ ), Net photosynthesis rate ( $\text{PN}_{\text{max}}$ )/per leaf dry weight ( $\mu\text{mol CO}_2 \cdot \text{m}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1} \cdot \text{DW}$ ), Net photosynthesis rate ( $\text{PN}_{\text{max}}$ )/per LA ( $\mu\text{mol CO}_2 \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ ) of plants grown either at HP or LP. For the P re-feed treatment, half of the plants that were formerly given a LP solution were re-supplied with a HP solution at 14 d. The other half was kept at LP and served as P-deficient plants. These were compared with P sufficient plants, which remained at HP for the duration of the experiment. Values are presented as means ( $n = 4$ ). Different letters indicate significant differences between each treatment ( $P \leq 0.05$ ).

| Leaf Parameters  | Treatments     |                |                |
|--|----------------|----------------|----------------|
|  | HP             | LP             | Re-feed        |
| Leaf dark respiration  | 1.22 ± 0.32 a  | 1.17 ± 0.20 a  | 1.37 ± 0.57 a  |
| Leaf area (L.A)  | 6.87 ± 0.50 a  | 6.20 ± 0.47 a  | 6.33 ± 0.35 a  |
| Leaf area ratio (LAR)  | 7.06 ± 0.40 a  | 7.48 ± 0.72 a  | 7.34 ± 0.76 a  |
| Specific leaf area (SLA)                                     | 0.04 ± 0.01 a  | 0.03 ± 0.01 a  | 0.04 ± 0.01 a  |
| Specific leaf mass (SLM)                                     | 0.019 ± 0.01 a | 0.021 ± 0.01 a | 0.017 ± 0.01 a |
| Leaf weight ratio (LWR)                                      | 0.33 ± 0.01 a  | 0.40 ± 0.01 b  | 0.37 ± 0.01 ab |
| Leaf expansion rate (LER)                                    | 0.14 ± 0.01 a  | 0.13 ± 0.01 a  | 0.13 ± 0.01 a  |
| Net assimilation rate (NAR)                                  | 41.33 ± 1.56 a | 40.29 ± 5.89 a | 41.26 ± 9.30 a |
| Net photosynthetic rate ( $\text{PN}_{\text{max}}$ ) per SLM | 0.65 ± 0.07 a  | 0.52 ± 0.08 a  | 0.66 ± 0.05 a  |
| Net photosynthetic rate ( $\text{PN}_{\text{max}}$ ) per L.A | 18.24 ± 1.23 a | 16.87 ± 1.29 a | 18.02 ± 1.02 a |



## 6.5 Discussion

Several morphological (e.g. smaller nodules) and physiological adaptations, including rapid adjustment of nodule biomass features and concurrent amendment of maintenance and growth respiration geared towards sustaining efficient N<sub>2</sub> metabolism as a response to and during recovery from P deficiency were observed for *Lupinus angustifolius*. In this study, the N<sub>2</sub> fixation response to and the subsequent recovery from P deficiency may be correlated to morphological and physiological changes apparent in nodules after prolonged P deprivation. Some of these responses are consistent with earlier reports, where it was found that P stress might increase nodule number and also that nodule mean mass is particularly sensitive to P deficiency (Israel, 1993; Ribet & Drevon, 1995).

Lupin plants in this experiment were well established and responses to P deficiency were expected to occur after some delay. This was indeed the case for dry matter accumulation, as total dry matter yield was not reduced significantly within the duration of the experiment. In contrast, physiological responses were more rapid despite having started off with a reasonably high internal P concentration.

Several studies have proposed a functional optimum for N<sub>2</sub> fixation at a given shoot P concentration (Tang *et al.*, 2001; Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002; Schulze *et al.*, 2006). For instance, under LP, white lupin requires a shoot P of about 3.05 mg P. g<sup>-1</sup> DW for N<sub>2</sub> fixation to function optimally for a similar period of assessment (21 d; Schulze *et al.*, 2006) to that reported here. The optimum P

level in shoots for the continuation of sufficient N<sub>2</sub> fixation at HP in this study is 3 times higher than the levels reported under LP, which corresponded to a marked decline in N<sub>2</sub> fixation under P deficiency conditions imposed here. Indeed, the value reported for this study of 2.0 mg P. g<sup>-1</sup> DW of shoot for LP corresponded to a decline in N<sub>2</sub> fixation of 15% (Fig. 2). During recovery of SNF from P-deficiency at 24 d, the shoot P concentration was altered to levels similar to those for HP plants and this translated into a concomitant increase in N<sub>2</sub> fixation (Fig. 2). The discrepancy in levels of optimal P in shoots for *L. albus* (≈ 8.0 mg P. g<sup>-1</sup> shoot DW; Schulze *et al.*, 2006) and *L. angustifolius* (≈ 6.2 mg P. g<sup>-1</sup> shoot DW, this study) under HP control conditions might be species related. Alternatively, it might be a reflection of metabolism as it pertains to cluster root formation in the case of *L. albus* in that study (Schulze *et al.*, 2006). Cluster roots would optimise P acquisition via organic acid exudation into the surrounding medium (Johnson *et al.*, 1996). Nevertheless, these data support the notion that legume host plants may require an internal P concentration for optimal N<sub>2</sub> fixation and physiological function (Israel, 1987; Tang *et al.*, 2001; Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002; Schulze *et al.*, 2006).

Furthermore, the increased PUE and SPUR of nodulated roots found in this study may also reflect the low P demand of *Bradyrhizobium* spp. in general. *Bradyrhizobium* sp. *Vigna* has previously been shown to be a P-efficient strain; that is, it was able to maintain a reasonable amount of N<sub>2</sub> fixation even at low levels of P (Beck & Munns, 1984). This concurs with the higher amount of N fixed expressed either per concentration P of nodulated root or per nodule dry weight, for P-deficient plants (Table 2) than for P sufficient



plants. The tendency for increased efficiency under LP has been noted previously for tolerant varieties of common bean, which consistently demonstrated a 3 times higher N-fixed/P concentration over time than plants with adequate P (Vadéz *et al.*, 1999).

Furthermore, results from this study suggest that lupins are able to withstand abrupt P withdrawal for up to at least 14 d, with a decline of symbiotic nitrogen fixation (SNF) capacity, judging from the altered %Ndfa associated herewith, at 24 days, (Fig. 1). This is in agreement with a previous study, which observed N<sub>2</sub> fixation to be unaffected by LP and only manifesting late ( $\approx$  27 d) in the growth cycle of *L. albus* under P deficient conditions (Schulze *et al.*, 2006). The %Ndfa recovered within 10 d to levels similar to those of P sufficient controls after P re-supply midway (14 d) through P deficiency (Fig. 1). A similar response of N<sub>2</sub> fixation recovery as observed for lupin was noted for soybean, in which seven days was the turn around time for recovery of N<sub>2</sub> fixation from P deficient conditions (Israel, 1993). Responses to abiotic stress, apart from being species specific, will also be a reflection of other features, including nodule anatomy (Walsh, 1995). Although these two systems represent contrasting nodule types, the evidence here and elsewhere (Israel, 1993), suggest that these responses to P re-supply may be similar and may be related to direct consequences of P effects on nodule functioning (Israel, 1993; Le Roux *et al.*, 2008).

One of the more pertinent questions of this study was to ascertain how respiratory costs would be altered to sustain N<sub>2</sub> fixation efficiency. Lower

root respiration, measured as CO<sub>2</sub> evolution, was demonstrated under LP conditions. However, this may not reflect true metabolic activity as it prevails in nodulated roots, since a great amount of the released CO<sub>2</sub> may very well be refixed via PEPc, especially under LP. Alternatively, some P efficient bean genotypes are known to invest in adventitious roots under LP, which would have higher specific root length and are associated with lower metabolic construction costs (Lynch, 2007). In the absence of detailed root anatomical and morphological assessments, this conclusion is at best speculative in this study but seems plausible.

However, the decline in total respiration with the onset of P deficiency concurs with previous work on LP versus HP in mycorrhizal roots (Peng *et al.*, 1993). Similarly, net nodulated root respiration as reported here, has previously been shown to decline under LP for white lupin (Schulze *et al.*, 2006). In that instance, a much higher CO<sub>2</sub> fixation rate of nodulated roots under LP was eventually able to offset the lower net CO<sub>2</sub> evolution of LP plants. We have previously reported (Le Roux *et al.*, 2008) that the CO<sub>2</sub> fixation rates increase dramatically under LP conditions due to the action of PEPc-MDH-ME alternative route engagement and therefore it seems plausible that although there was a decline in root respiration in general, this may have been transient and that a related mechanism, as observed for *L. albus*, may be at work in *L. angustifolius*. It was proposed that plants that have a higher efficiency of P acquisition per unit C spent for root construction and maintenance would perform better under LP (Nielsen *et al.*, 2001). This may



hold true here with lower root construction costs associated for nodulated lupins in this study.

During the vegetative growth phase of plants, it is thought that a larger fraction of total respiration may be expended on maintenance at the expense of growth (Amthor, 1989). Due to the protein-richness of legumes in general the maintenance respiration component is expected to increase since the C for building of proteins require relatively more maintenance as opposed to that for lignin and cellulose (Penning de Vries, 1975; Johnson, 1990). The components of total root respiration revealed a greater percentage of respiratory energy devoted to maintenance respiration than to growth respiration. However, with P deficiency, the allocation toward maintenance respiration declined in favour of growth respiration. This concurs with the increase in root growth under LP, suggesting that proportionally more respiratory energy was allocated to growth of new tissue. Moreover, the decline in maintenance respiration under LP is underpinned by the lower P uptake and SNF rates. Upon re-feeding, the total root respiration increased with a simultaneous increase in the percentage of maintenance respiration, reflecting that energy was spent on BNF and P uptake.

The changes that occur during response to P deficiency in nodulated roots versus the maintenance of all photosynthetic parameters (except for the leaf weight ratio [LWR]) in our study apparently support the view that P deficiency elicits a direct response from root nodule functioning rather than from host plant growth (Tables 1 & 3). Leaf weight ratio increased when

subjected to LP (Table 3). These observations with *L. angustifolius* starkly contrast those for *L. albus* where it was proposed that plant growth was more significantly affected (Schulze *et al.*, 2006). The tendency for an increased LWR under LP was instantly reversed once the roots were supplemented with P again. The higher LWR under P deficiency reflects the investment into leave biomass and may be interpreted as optimising light harvesting for whole plant photosynthetic capacity to proceed unperturbed. This was previously observed for P-efficient potato genotypes (Balemi, 2009). Indeed, results here corroborate this notion in that there was no effect of P supply on net photosynthetic rate expressed both per unit leaf area ( $PN_{\max}/LA$ ) and per unit specific leaf mass ( $PN_{\max}/SLM$ ) under LP (Table 3). In addition to unchanged photosynthetic rates, biomass-based net assimilation rate (NAR) and leaf dark respiration also remained unchanged at LP (Table 3).

In conclusion, lupins show clear adaptive features, encompassing both physiological and morphological parameters associated with nodule function. Physiological adaptations could involve a switch to a highly efficient nodule metabolism related to the optimisation of  $N_2$  fixation under LP and an increase in growth respiration relative to investment in maintenance respiration.



## 6.6 References

Amthor JS (1989) Respiration and crop productivity. Springer-Verlag, New York, USA.

Balemi T (2009) Effect of phosphorus nutrition on growth of potato genotypes with contrasting phosphorus efficiency. *African Crop Science Journal* 17: 199-212.

Beck DP, Munns DN (1984) Phosphate nutrition of *Rhizobium* spp. *Applied Environmental Microbiology* 47: 278-282.

Boddey RM, Oliveira OC, Alves BJR, Urquiaga S (1995) Field application of the  $^{15}\text{N}$  isotope dilution technique for the reliable quantification of plant-associated biological nitrogen fixation. *Fertilizer Research* 42: 77-87.

Curioni PMG, Hartwig UA, Nösberger J, Schuller KA (1999) Glycolytic flux is adjusted to nitrogenase activity in nodules of detopped and argon-treated alfalfa plants. *Plant Physiology* 119: 445-453.

Fernández-Pascual M, Puyeo JJ, de Felipe MR, Golvano MP, Lucas MM (2007) Singular features of the *Bradyrhizobium-Lupinus* symbiosis. *Dynamic Soil, Dynamic Plant* 1-16.

Fischinger SA, Schulze J (2010) The importance of nodule CO<sub>2</sub> fixation for the efficiency of symbiotic nitrogen fixation in pea at vegetative growth and during pod formation. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 61: 2281-2291.

Freeden AL, Rao IM, Terry N (1989) Influence of phosphorus nutrition on growth and carbon partitioning in *Glycine max*. *Plant Physiology* 89: 225-230.

Hartwig UA (1998) The regulation of symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> fixation: a conceptual model on N feedback from the ecosystem to the gene expression level. *Perspectives in Plant Ecology, Evolution and Systematics* 1: 92-120.

Høgh-Jensen H, Schjoerring JK, Soussana J-F (2002) The influence of phosphorus deficiency on growth and nitrogen fixation of white clover plants. *Annals of Botany* 90: 745-753.

Israel DW (1987) Investigation of the role of phosphorus in symbiotic dinitrogen fixation. *Plant Physiology* 84: 835-840.

Israel DW (1993) Symbiotic dinitrogen fixation and host-plant growth during development of and recovery from phosphorus deficiency. *Physiologia Plantarum* 88: 294-300.

Jakobsen I (1985) The role of phosphorus in nitrogen fixation by young pea plants (*Pisum sativum*). *Physiologia Plantarum* 64: 190-196.



Johnson IR (1990) Plant respiration in relation to growth, maintenance, ion uptake and nitrogen assimilation. *Plant, Cell and Environment* 13: 319-328.

Johnson JF, Vance CP, Allan DL (1996) Phosphorus deficient *Lupinus albus*: altered lateral root development and enhanced expression of phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase. *Plant Physiology* 112: 31-41.

Keerthisinghe G, Hocking PJ, Ryan PR, Delhaize E (1998) Effect of phosphorus supply on the formation and function of proteoid roots of white lupin (*Lupinus albus* L.). *Plant, Cell and Environment* 21: 467-478.

Kouas S, Alkama N, Abdelly C, Drevon J-J (2008) Proton release by nodulated roots varies among common bean genotypes (*Phaseolus vulgaris*) under phosphorus deficiency. *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science* 171: 242-248.



Le Roux MR, Kahn S, Valentine AJ (2008) Organic acid accumulation may inhibit N<sub>2</sub> fixation in P-stressed lupin nodules. *New Phytologist* 177: 956-964.

Liu J, Samac DA, Bucciarelli B, Allan DL, Vance CP (2005) Signalling of phosphorus deficiency-induced gene expression in white lupin requires sugar and phloem transport. *The Plant Journal* 41: 257-268.

Lynch JP (2007) Roots of the second green revolution. *Australian Journal of Botany* 55: 493-512.

Mortimer PE, Archer E, Valentine AJ (2005) Mycorrhizal C costs and nutritional benefits in developing grapevines. *Mycorrhiza* 15: 159-165.

Nielsen KL, Eshel A, Lynch JP (2001) The effect of phosphorus availability on the carbon economy of contrasting common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.) genotypes. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 52: 329-339.

Peng S, Eissenstat DM, Graham JH, Williams K, Hodge NC (1993) Growth depression in mycorrhizal citrus at high-phosphorus supply. *Plant Physiology* 101: 1063-1071.

Penning de Vries FWT (1975) The cost of maintenance processes in plant cells. *Annals of Botany* 39: 77-92.

Ribet J, Drevon J-J (1995) Increase in permeability to oxygen and in oxygen uptake of soybean nodules under limiting phosphorus nutrition. *Physiologia Plantarum* 94: 298-304.

Schulze J, Adgo E, Schilling G (1994) The influence of N<sub>2</sub> fixation on the carbon balance of leguminous plants. *Experientia* 50: 906-912.

Schulze J (2004) How are nitrogen fixation rates regulated in legumes? *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science* 167: 125-137.



Schulze J, Temple G, Temple SJ, Beschow H, Vance CP (2006) Nitrogen fixation by white lupin under phosphorus deficiency. *Annals of Botany* 98: 731-740.

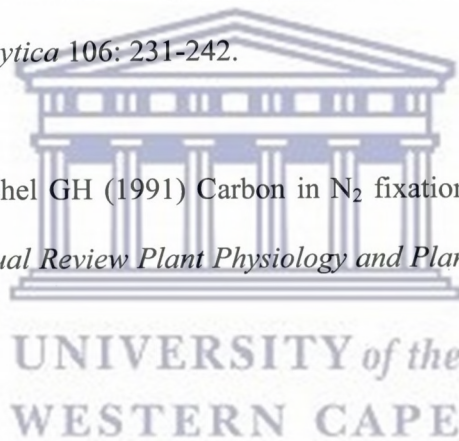
Tang C, Hinsinger P, Drevon JJ, Jaillard B (2001) Phosphorus deficiency impairs early nodule functioning and enhances proton release in roots of *Medicago truncatula* L. *Annals of Botany* 88: 131-138.

Vadéz V, Lasso JH, Beck DP, Drevon JJ (1999) Variability of N<sub>2</sub> fixation in common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.) under P deficiency is related to P use efficiency. *Euphytica* 106: 231-242.

Vance CP, Heichel GH (1991) Carbon in N<sub>2</sub> fixation: limitation or exquisite adaptation. *Annual Review Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* 42: 373-392.

Van Iersel MW, Seymour L (2000) Growth respiration, maintenance respiration, and carbon fixation of *Vinca*: a time series analysis. *Journal of American Society for Horticultural Science* 125: 702-706.

Walsh PR, Vessey JK, Layzell DB (1992) Carbohydrate supply and N<sub>2</sub> fixation in soybean: the effect of varied day length and stem girdling. *Plant Physiology* 85: 137-144.



Warembourg FR, Montagne D, Bardin R (1982) The simultaneous use of  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  and  $^{15}\text{N}_2$  labeling techniques to study the carbon and nitrogen economy of legumes grown under natural conditions. *Physiologia Plantarum* 56: 46-55.

Warembourg FR, Roumet C (1989) Why and how to estimate the cost of symbiotic  $\text{N}_2$  fixation? A progressive approach based on the use of  $^{14}\text{C}$  and  $^{15}\text{N}$  isotopes. *Plant and Soil* 115: 167-177.

Williams K, Percival F, Merino J, Mooney HA (1987) Estimation of tissue construction cost from heat of combustion and organic nitrogen content. *Plant Cell and Environment* 10: 725-734.





# CHAPTER 7

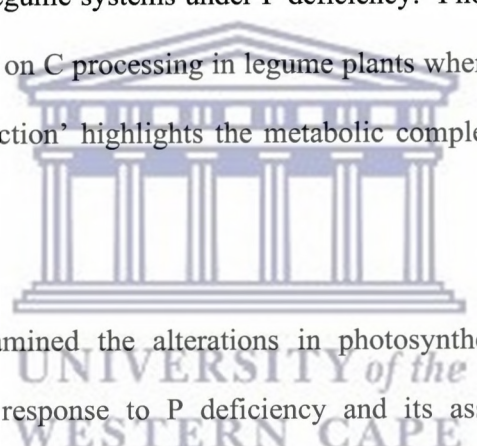


**General Conclusion**

UNIVERSITY *of the*  
WESTERN CAPE

## 7.1 Overview

The effects of P deficiency have received considerable attention in legumes, due to the greater responsiveness of the N<sub>2</sub> fixing process to P as depicted by the numerous studies in Table 1. Most such studies addressed the perturbations in biological nitrogen fixation (BNF) in response to changes in various host growth effects, the oxygen diffusion barrier, amino acid feedback regulation, photosynthetic supply, and proton efflux from nodules. Some notable shortcomings of the aforementioned studies are a lack of investigation of both the energy costs and the alternative metabolic routes associated with C and N metabolism in legume systems under P deficiency. Phosphorus deficiency has specific bearing on C processing in legume plants where its interaction with N at the PEP 'junction' highlights the metabolic complexity in such symbiotic systems.



This thesis examined the alterations in photosynthetic and respiratory C metabolism in response to P deficiency and its associated affects on N<sub>2</sub> fixation. This study ascertained the 'late' responses (*see* Hammond *et al.*, 2004), which affect morphological, physiological or metabolic changes in legumes, as these are seen to be more specific in response to the stress imposed on the system (Nilsson *et al.*, 2010). Moreover, these were contextualised in terms of short-term P deficiency (14 d) (Chapters 3 & 4) versus prolonged (24 d) P deficiency responses (Chapters 5 & 6). The recovery after subsequent P alleviation was also assessed (Chapter 6). Furthermore, the accumulation of organic acids, most notably malate, was closely scrutinised in relation to its role in the N<sub>2</sub> fixation process.



**Table 1:** The effects of P deficiency on various aspects of nodule development and nodule metabolism. The information was sourced from various publications. **Note:** \* P deficiency is the only known abiotic stress that increases nodule permeability. <sup>a</sup> Not determined

| P deficiency effect                 | Legume species   | References  |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| Increased<br>Unchanged<br>Decreased | <b>Nitrogen fixation</b><br><i>Phaseolus vulgaris</i> spp.; <i>Vigna unguiculata</i><br><i>Lupinus angustifolius</i><br><i>Medicago sativa</i> ; <i>Glycine max</i> ; <i>Lupinus albus</i> | Jebara <i>et al.</i> , 2005<br>Le Roux <i>et al.</i> , 2006; 2009<br>Drevon & Hartwig, 1997; Schulze <i>et al.</i> , 2006   |
|                                     | <b>O<sub>2</sub> metabolism/Respiration</b><br><i>Phaseolus vulgaris</i> spp.; <i>Vigna unguiculata</i> ;<br><i>Medicago truncatula</i>  | Schulze & Drevon, 2005; Alkama <i>et al.</i> , 2009; Sulieman <i>et al.</i> , 2008<br>-                                     |
|                                     | <b>N metabolism</b><br><i>Phaseolus vulgaris</i> ; <i>Vigna unguiculata</i><br><i>Phaseolus vulgaris</i> ; <i>Lupinus angustifolius</i><br><i>Glycine max</i>                              | Sulieman <i>et al.</i> , 2008<br>Olivera <i>et al.</i> , 2004; Le Roux <i>et al.</i> , 2009<br>Le Roux <i>et al.</i> , 2009 |
| Increased<br>Unchanged<br>Decreased | <b>C metabolism</b><br><i>Lupinus albus</i> , <i>Lupinus angustifolius</i><br>N.D. <sup>a</sup><br><i>Trifolium repens</i>   | Schulze <i>et al.</i> , 2006; Le Roux <i>et al.</i> , 2008<br>-   |
|                                     | <b>H<sup>+</sup> release</b><br><i>Phaseolus vulgaris</i> spp.; <i>Vigna unguiculata</i><br>N.D.<br>N.D.   | Høgh-Jensen <i>et al.</i> , 2002<br>Tang <i>et al.</i> , 2001; Kouas <i>et al.</i> , 2008; Alkama <i>et al.</i> , 2009<br>- |
|                                     | <b>Nodule biomass</b><br>N.D.<br><i>Lupinus angustifolius</i> , <i>Glycine max</i><br><i>Glycine max</i> ; <i>Medicago sativa</i>  | -<br>Le Roux <i>et al.</i> , 2009<br>Drevon & Hartwig, 1997; Schulze <i>et al.</i> , 2006                                   |

### 7.2.1 Key findings

This study demonstrated some common responses of symbiotic legumes to LP, albeit that we have considered the dynamics of such responses after abrupt P withdrawal as oppose to steady-state conditions. Under the latter, P stress is imposed on the system since the seedlings emerge up until they are harvested. Thus, discrepancies abound with results from various microarray studies reflecting the different approaches attempted to address effects of P deficiency on growth and metabolism (Misson *et al.*, 2005; Morcuende *et al.*, 2007). To this end, we highlight here some key new features, which we propose should be exploited in future research studies that follow below.

- This study demonstrated species-specific responses of N<sub>2</sub> fixation to P deficiency, which may also underpin different regulatory mechanisms. For instance, feedback inhibition of N<sub>2</sub> fixation by accumulated N metabolites, probably ureides or specific amino acid(s), is emerging as the regulatory trigger under LP in the ureide-exporting legume types, including soybean from our study (Vadéz *et al.*, 1999; Almeida *et al.*, 2000; Tang *et al.*, 2001; Olivera *et al.*, 2004).
- Under short-term LP, an efficient metabolic P<sub>i</sub> recycling mechanism, through the engagement of the alternative PEPc-MDH-ME route was implicated in the maintenance of N<sub>2</sub> fixation in the apparent more tolerant lupin. Radio isotope <sup>14</sup>C tracer studies and subsequent organic acid fractionation, confirmed the induction of the aforementioned alternative route in P-starved nodules. These are in accordance with previous studies (Theodorou & Plaxton, 1993, Le Roux *et al.*, 2006).



- The observed induction of the PEPc-MDH-ME route in nodulated root lupins increased the capacity of nodules to procure malate for bacteroid respiration, which serves to sustain SNF. Two novel cytosolic MDHs (cMDHs), one for HP controls and another for plants grown under LP were identified in our study. The high malate concentrations reported here are speculated to have arisen through the apparently distinct form of cMDH under LP. Future expression studies with the isolated cMDHs will elucidate this.

These aforementioned responses to P deficiency mainly reflect the dependence on plant growth history and effects on nodulation and nodule anatomy as noted by Walsh (1995). In addition, the responses to P deficiency are directly related to the severity and duration of the stress (Walsh, 1995; Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002). What follows relates the adaptive responses of lupin plants, because of its perceived robustness to LP in the short-term, to the extent and intensity of P deficiency. Lupin plants were well developed before the P stress treatments were induced in our studies and responses were expected to occur after some delay.

- The most notable lagged response was observed for the decline in %Ndfa, which is directly proportional to the rate of N<sub>2</sub> fixation. Similarly, other related parameters (e.g. photosynthetic activity) remained largely unchanged, likely due to increases in associated shoot construction costs and growth respiratory costs under LP, which upheld growth.

- An observed increase for the leaf weight ratio (LWR) may have been an adaptation to optimize light interception for the purpose of driving photosynthate (C) supply from the shoot to the nodules. In addition, the EURS, an indication of the utilisation efficiency of the rhizobial symbiosis for shoot growth, may be a useful parameter to consider in programmes, which attempt to breed legumes with tolerance for LP.
- Root respiration and N<sub>2</sub> fixation per unit root mass were lower under LP, with most of the assimilates partitioned to the root system used to increase the size of the root system. This is evidenced by a typical response under LP of a preferential distribution of biomass to roots as oppose to shoots; thus an increase in root:shoot ratio under LP. This is further confirmed by the considerable decoupling of the legume host nutrient uptake and plant growth, with an observed increase in nodulated growth respiration relative to maintenance respiration under LP. Thus, changes in relative growth rate, particularly that of nodulated roots, rather than changes in resource uptake are of consequence here.
- The perceived increased ratio of non-photosynthetic CO<sub>2</sub> fixation to N<sub>2</sub> fixation under prolonged LP conditions, reflects the interrelationship between organic acid synthesis and N<sub>2</sub> fixation and gives strong credence to the proposal that accumulation of organic acids (or specific organic acids; e.g. malate) above a certain threshold will be inhibitory to N<sub>2</sub> fixation.



- Respiratory costs involved in sustaining  $N_2$  fixation efficiency of nodulated roots, expressed both as  $O_2$  consumption and  $CO_2$  evolution were impaired under prolonged LP conditions. A possible attempt to offset impaired nodulated root respiration was through producing smaller nodules. Legumes that form smaller nodules under LP increase their surface: volume ratio, which are supported by increased respiration rates and unchanged SNF as reported by Schulze & Drevon (2005). Alternatively, initial declines of respiration could eventually be offset by increased  $CO_2$  fixation (Schulze *et al.*, 2006). Our observed results are supportive of this conclusion.

Finally, this work has shown that as P deficiency develops under prolonged LP, whole plant morphological responses are initiated in lupins. These morphological adjustments included a proportional increase in leaf mass and reduction in nodule mass. The observed phenotypic plasticity of leaves and nodules was also noticeable after alleviation of P limitation. Therefore, regulatory responses to P deprivation in lupin plants involved increasing partitioning to nodulated roots (for P acquisition) and leaves (for C acquisition) and by reducing nodule mass (N acquisition), similarly to that for white clover plants (Høgh-Jensen *et al.*, 2002). Moreover, attempts to optimise nodule metabolism was through accentuated use efficiencies for P (e.g. PUE; SPUR), under LP.

### 7.2.2 *Measuring plant-associated nitrogen fixation*

Several studies involving legumes are concerned with evaluating N<sub>2</sub> fixation in host plants, because of its importance in cropping systems and its consequent effects on soil N dynamics (Danso *et al.*, 1992). The methodologies for quantifying N<sub>2</sub> fixation may be instantaneous (*e.g.* acetylene reduction assay [ARA], hydrogen evolution), which gives a measure of activity only at the time of sampling. In contrast, the <sup>15</sup>N natural abundance (NA) and <sup>15</sup>N isotope dilution (NID) methods feature among the more common <sup>15</sup>N isotope methods, because it estimates time-integrated rates of symbiotic N<sub>2</sub> fixation during the growing period of crops. In recent times, there has been increased interest in the NA method, because of its perceived accuracy and ease of use on various large-scale fields (Gathumbi *et al.*, 2002; Pons *et al.*, 2007). Methodologically it is important to consider the choice of technique and the limitations of each for measuring N<sub>2</sub> fixation capacity.

The NA method utilises the small differences, expressed as  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$ , in <sup>15</sup>N natural abundance between N<sub>2</sub> fixing and non-fixing plants. Variations of  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$ , signified as the relative deviation (in ‰), arise from small discrepancies of <sup>15</sup>N abundance of atmospheric N<sub>2</sub>. For plants growing non-symbiotically and at high mineral N, the  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  is set to nil, because they derive all their N from the soil. One possible limitation of the NA technique is the wide temporal and spatial variations of soil  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$ , due to heterogenous distribution of soil N and also processes such as nitrification, denitrification, and mineralization occurring in soils. The other problem relates to finding a



suitable reference plant, having soil N acquisition characteristics similar to those of the N<sub>2</sub> fixing plants being assessed (Boddey *et al.*, 2000).

We have assessed N<sub>2</sub> fixation through both these methods in studies undertaken here, and although not directly comparable, we have found a small degree of variability, based only on the percentage decline of N<sub>2</sub> fixation capacity under the same LP conditions. The decline of biomass-based N<sub>2</sub> fixation as assessed through ARA amounted to 22%, whereas for the <sup>15</sup>N isotope natural abundance this decline was only 15% under LP in relation to HP control plants. Both the ARA and <sup>15</sup>N natural abundance isotope techniques, then, appears to have been sensitive diagnostic tools for detecting N<sub>2</sub> fixation capacity where plants were either grown in pot culture or hydroponics. In any case, the main objective of our studies was merely to compare relative differences between different legume species and induced treatments (*i.e.* HP vs. LP). Nevertheless, we extended the understanding of the sensitivity of N<sub>2</sub> fixing systems to the nutritional variable of LP. Such pot and hydroponics experiments under glasshouse conditions will still need to be validated under field conditions, because a poor correlation between legumes grown under these varying conditions (Hernandez *et al.*, 1993).

### 7.3 Future work

Although N<sub>2</sub> fixation may be highly responsive to any alterations in P concentrations, a lagged response to LP could be due to the high accumulation of P<sub>i</sub> as proposed here. This may be an innate ability of more tolerant legume varieties. In this regard, the use efficiencies, both for P (and N), are key

determinants in adaptability of legumes to changes in the environment. This study may serve to inform management strategies to improve nutrient use efficiencies (P and/or N) of various agronomically important legumes and is regarded as an important strategy to address the problem of declining arable land.

Furthermore, there is a need to link transcriptional and biochemical responses with regulatory mechanisms involving quantitative trait loci (QTLs) associated with tolerant cultivars. This remains crucial to determining the relevance of those genes to tolerance traits. The advent of tailored genomic techniques has placed researchers ever closer to identifying patterns of gene expression and gene function. In this regard, a study on the regulatory role of small RNA (sRNA), most notably miR399, in response to P deficiency is currently underway. The plasticity of regulatory and signalling mechanisms involved in P acquisition will be useful for the ultimate manipulation of legume systems.

Integrated analyses involving transcriptomics, metabolomics, proteomics and enzyme biochemistry is key to identifying important roles of certain genes/pathways of symbiotic host plants to P deficiency. The induction of the alternative PEPc-MDH-ME route is one such case in point. We confirmed the key role of malate in regulating  $N_2$  fixation activity. This should pave the way for exploitation because of its central role in metabolism and its apparent utilization in almost every major organelle in which it features, and in symbiotic plants in particular. Already, the over-expression of a neMDH in alfalfa plants have been shown to contribute to microbial diversity and



increased availability of several macronutrients, including P, in the rhizosphere of plots on which such transgenic plants were grown (Tesfaye *et al.*, 2003).

### 7.3 Concluding remarks

From the onset, this manuscript argues for the need to integrate legumes more prominently into modern-day farming systems, because they have a role to moderate the environmental impact of agriculture. However, in many low-input agricultural systems,  $P_i$  is one of the most limiting mineral nutrients for plant production in general, but for legumes in particular. The renewed upsurge in research on plant mineral nutrition applying molecular biology and plant physiology to dissect the mechanisms underlying the nutrient acquisition and utilisation is great. This is especially important in a complex mutualistic relationship of this nature, which poses a challenge with regard to how mineral resources are shared for the benefit of both partners, but ultimately for the betterment of the ecology of an entire system. Molecular tools will be imperative to advance this agenda. In this way, as the molecular physiology of the mechanisms underlying the regulation of mineral acquisition and utilisation emerges it should pave the way for the improvement of legume crops related to improved P acquisition efficiencies.

#### 7.4 References

Alkama N, Bolou EBB, Vailhe H, Roger L, Ounane SM, Drevon J-J (2009) Genotypic variability in P use efficiency for symbiotic nitrogen fixation is associated with variation of proton efflux in cowpea rhizosphere. *Soil, Biology and Biochemistry* 41: 1814-1823.

Colebatch G, Desbrosses G, Ott T, Krusell L, Montanari O, Kloska S, Kopka J, Udvardi M. 2004. Global changes in transcription orchestrate metabolic differentiation during symbiotic nitrogen fixation in *Lotus japonicus*. *Plant Journal* 39: 487-512.

Drevon J-J, Hartwig UA (1997) Phosphorus deficiency increases the argon-induced decline of nodule nitrogenase activity in soybean and alfalfa. *Planta* 201: 463-469.

Hernandez G, Vasquez H, Toscano V, Sanchez M, Penate T, Franchi-Alfaro A Mendez N, Drevon J-J (1993) Nodulation and growth of common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.) cultivars in hydroponic culture and in the field. *Tropical Agriculture* 70: 230-234.

Høgh-Jensen H, Schjoerring JK, Soussana J-F (2002) The influence of phosphorus deficiency on growth and nitrogen fixation of white clover plants. *Annals of Botany* 90: 745-753.

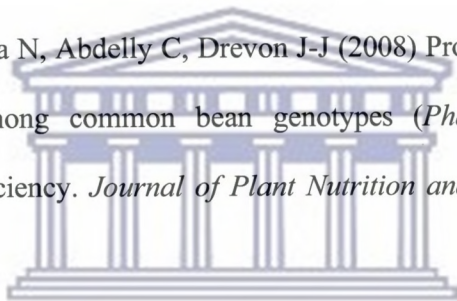


Israel DW (1987) Investigation of the role of phosphorus in symbiotic dinitrogen fixation. *Plant Physiology* 84: 835-840.

Jakobsen I (1985) The role of phosphorus in nitrogen fixation by young pea plants (*Pisum sativum*). *Physiologia Plantarum* 64: 190-196.

Jebara M, Aouani ME, Payre H, Drevon J-J (2005) Nodule conductance varied among common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*) genotypes under phosphorus deficiency. *Journal of Plant Physiology* 162: 309-315.

Kouas S, Alkama N, Abdelly C, Drevon J-J (2008) Proton release by nodulated roots varies among common bean genotypes (*Phaseolus vulgaris*) under phosphorus deficiency. *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science* 171: 242-248.



UNIVERSITY of the  
WESTERN CAPE

Le Roux MR, Ward CL, Botha FC, Valentine AJ (2006) The route of pyruvate synthesis under P<sub>i</sub> starvation in legume root systems. *New Phytologist* 169: 399-408.

Le Roux MR, Kahn S, Valentine AJ (2008) Organic acid accumulation may inhibit N<sub>2</sub> fixation in P-stressed lupin nodules. *New Phytologist* 177: 956-964.

Le Roux MR, Khan S, Valentine AJ (2009) Nitrogen and carbon costs of soybean and lupin root systems during phosphate starvation. *Symbiosis* 48: 102-109.

Lodwig E, Poole P (2003) Metabolism of *Rhizobium* bacteroids. *Critical Reviews in Plant Science* 22: 37-78.

Minchin FR (1997) Regulation of oxygen diffusion in legume nodules. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry* 29: 881-888.

Misson J, Raghothama K, Jain A, Jouhet J, Block MA, Bligny R, Ortet P, Creff A, Somerville S, Rolland N, Doumas P, Nacry P, Herrera-Estrella L, Nussaume L, Thibaud MC (2005) A genome-wide transcriptional analysis using *Arabidopsis thaliana* Affymetrix gene chips determined plant responses to phosphate deprivation. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science of the USA* 102: 11934-11939.

Morcuende R, Bar R, Gibon Y, Zheng W, Pant BD, Bläsing O, Usadel B, Czechowski T, Udvardi MK, Stitt M, Scheible WR (2007) Genome-wide reprogramming of metabolism and regulatory networks of *Arabidopsis* in response to phosphorus. *Plant, Cell and Environment* 30: 85-112.

Olivera M, Tejera N, Iribarne C, Ocaña A, Lluch C (2004) Growth, nitrogen fixation and ammonium assimilation in common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*): effect of phosphorus. *Physiologia Plantarum* 121: 498-505.

Sa T-M, Israel DW (1991) Energy status and functioning of phosphorus-deficient soybean nodules. *Plant Physiology* 97: 928-935.



Schulze J, Drevon J-J (2005) P-deficiency increases the O<sub>2</sub> uptake per N<sub>2</sub> reduced in alfalfa. *Journal of Experimental Botany* 56: 1779-1784.

Schulze J, Temple G, Temple SJ, Beschow H, Vance CP (2006) Nitrogen fixation by white lupin under phosphorus deficiency. *Annals of Botany* 98: 731-740.

Smith PMC, Atkins CA (2002) Purine biosynthesis: Big in cell division and even bigger in nitrogen assimilation. *Plant Physiology* 128: 793-802.

Suliman S, Fischinger S, Schulze J (2008) N feedback regulation of N<sub>2</sub> fixation in *Medicago truncatula* under P deficiency. *General Applied Plant Physiology* 34: 33-54.

Tang C, Hinsinger P, Drevon JJ, Jaillard B. 2001. Phosphorus deficiency impairs early nodule functioning and enhances proton release in roots of *Medicago truncatula* L. *Annals of Botany* 88: 131-138.

Vance CP, Boylan KLM, Maxwell CA, Heichel GH, Hardman LL (1985) Transport and partitioning of CO<sub>2</sub> fixed by root nodules of ureide and amide producing legumes. *Plant Physiology* 78: 774-778.